Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 840SC.

- Read this guide thoroughly before using handset to ensure proper usage.
- Accessible services may be limited by contract conditions or service area.
- Handset is compatible with 3G network technologies.

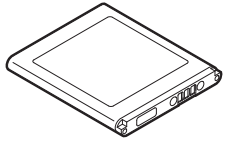
Notes

- Unauthorized copying of any part of this guide is prohibited.
- Contents are subject to change without prior notice.
- Steps have been taken to ensure the accuracy of descriptions in this guide. If you find inaccurate or missing information, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (➔P.15-31).

Accessories

Make sure the following accessories are included in the package with handset. These accessories are also sold separately.
For details on accessories or optional items, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (➔P.15-31).

Battery [SCBAM1]



Quick Start Guide (Japanese)

Safety Precautions (Japanese)

Warranty (Handset)

- Use only specified Charger (sold separately) for charging.
- Handset takes microSD™/microSDHC™ Memory Card (not included). Purchase one to use Memory Card functions.
- microSD™/microSDHC™ Memory Card is referred to as "Memory Card" in this guide.
- Download Samsung New PC Studio from SAMSUNG Website (http://jp.samsungmobile.com/pc/lineup/840download.html).

Memo

Chapter Contents At a Glance

Getting Started	1
Basic Operations	2
Calling	3
Messaging	4
Internet Services	5
Digital TV	6
Camera & Imaging	7
Media Player	8
Entertainment	9
Handy Extras	10
Handset Security	11
Data Folder & Memory Card	12
Connectivity & File Backup	13
Handset Customization	14
Appendix	15

About This Guide

In this guide, SoftBank 840SC is referred to as "handset". Instructions are described using mainly default settings. When settings are changed, screenshots or handset responses may differ from those depicted in this guide.

Screenshots & 840SC Illustrations

Screenshots appearing in this guide are for reference only and may differ from actual Display images. Product illustrations may differ from actual product appearance.
In some screenshots, Wallpaper is set to None for Display image clarity.

Confirmations & Warning Messages

Messages not described in this guide may appear; read all handset confirmations and warning messages carefully.

Japanese Functions & Services

When " (Japanese) " appears in a title, Japanese ability is required to use full range of the function or service.

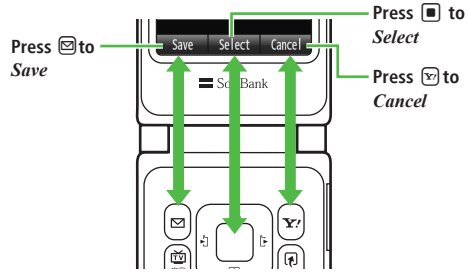
Symbols

In this guide, graphics represent handset keys; see "Parts & Functions" (➲P.1-2).

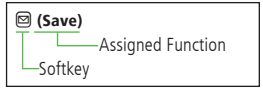
Softkeys and Multi Selector operations are indicated as follows:

Softkeys

Operation options such as "Select" and "Save" appear at the bottom of Display (Softkey area). Press the corresponding Softkey to execute assigned functions.



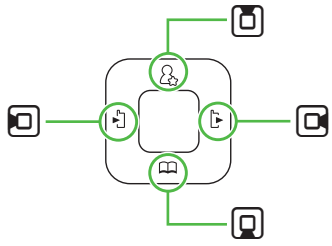
Softkey Operations



Multi Selector Operations

Use Multi Selector to select menu items, move cursor, scroll, etc. In this guide, Multi Selector operations are indicated as shown below:

Basic Multi Selector Operations



: Press or
: Press or
: Press , , or

Menu Operations

Menu operation explanations are abbreviated with arrows.

Main Menu

1 ● → *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Wallpaper*

Highlight an item and ● (Select)

For details, see "Using Main Menu" (➔P.2-2).

Menu

1 → *Send* → *Via infrared*

Highlight an item and ● (Select)

Press (Menu) to open Menu

Highlighting

In this guide, "to highlight" means to move cursor to an item.

Contents

Introduction 2
Accessories 3
About This Guide ii
Contents iv
Safety Precautions vii
General Notes xiv
SAR Certification xx
European RF Exposure Information xxi

1 Getting Started

Parts & Functions 1-2
USIM Card 1-4
Battery & Charger 1-6
Power On/Off 1-9
Account Details 1-10
Handling Precautions (Key Lock) 1-11
Minding Mobile Manners. 1-11
Security Codes 1-12
Advanced Settings 1-13

2 Basic Operations

Accessing Functions. 2-2
Incoming Settings 2-4
Standby Display Options 2-5
Text Entry 2-7
User's Dictionary (Japanese) 2-12
Phone Book 2-13
Advanced Settings 2-16

3 Calling

Voice Call 3-2
Video Call. 3-4
Favorites 3-6
Emergency Numbers 3-7
Answering Machine 3-7
Black List 3-8
Call Log Records 3-9
Checking Call Time/Cost. 3-11
International Calling 3-12
Global Roaming 3-12
Optional Services 3-14
Advanced Settings 3-19

4 Messaging

Messaging Basics. 4-2
Customizing Mail Address 4-3
Creating/Sending Messages. 4-3
Incoming Messages 4-7
Using Messages 4-11
Managing Messages 4-14
Advanced Settings 4-16

5 Internet Services

Internet Services 5-2
Yahoo! Keitai 5-3
PC Site Browser 5-4
Page Operations. 5-5
Bookmarks & Saved Pages. 5-8
Advanced Settings 5-9

6 Digital TV

Enjoy One Seg in Widescreen 6-2
Digital TV Precautions 6-3
Channel Setup (Area Setup) 6-3
Watching TV 6-4
Receiving Call While Watching TV 6-6
Record/Playback Programs 6-7
TV Timer/TV Timer Recording 6-8
Advanced Settings 6-9

7 Camera & Imaging

Capturing Image, Recording Video & Editing . . . 7-2
Camera 7-3
Video 7-9
Editing Still Images 7-11
Photo Library 7-12
Advanced Settings 7-13

8 Media Player

Using Media Player 8-2
Downloading Media Files 8-3
Playing Music 8-3
Playing Movie 8-5
Using Playlist 8-8
Streaming 8-8
Advanced Settings 8-9

9 Entertainment

Entertainment Functions 9-2
S! Applications (Japanese) 9-3
S! Quick News (Japanese) 9-3
Free Contents (Japanese) 9-5
S! Contents Store (Japanese) 9-5
S! Information Channel (Japanese) 9-5
BookSurfing® (Japanese) 9-6
Advanced Settings 9-6

10 Handy Extras

Useful Handset Applications 10-2
Alarms 10-3
Calendar 10-4
Tasks 10-5
UV Checker 10-6
Stopwatch 10-6
World Clock 10-7
Good Night Timer 10-7
Calculator 10-8
Notepad 10-8
Barcode Reader 10-8
Converter 10-10
Dutch Treat 10-11
Voice Recorder 10-11
File Viewer 10-12
Dummy Call 10-13
Dictionary 10-14
Advanced Settings 10-14

Contents

11 Handset Security

Handset Security 11-2
Changing Phone Password. 11-3
Phone Lock. 11-3
Function Lock. 11-5
Restoring Default Settings 11-6

12 Data Folder & Memory Card

Data Folder 12-2
Viewing Files 12-3
Managing Files/Folders 12-6
Memory Card. 12-8
Viewing Memory Status. 12-9
Advanced Settings 12-10

13 Connectivity & File Backup

File Transfers & Backup 13-2
Infrared 13-3
USB Connection 13-4
Memory Card Backup. 13-5
S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB). 13-7
Advanced Settings 13-9

14 Handset Customization

Phone Settings. 14-2
Sounds & Vibration & External Light Settings. . . . 14-4
Display & Font Settings 14-5
Manner Mode Settings. 14-7
Call Settings. 14-7
Phone Book Settings 14-12
Messaging Settings 14-12
Internet Settings 14-16
Digital TV Settings 14-18
Camera Settings. 14-20
Media Player Settings 14-22
Entertainment Settings 14-23
Security Settings 14-24
Memory Settings 14-25
Connectivity Settings 14-26

15 Appendix

Troubleshooting 15-2
Drying Off Handset 15-5
Reattaching Port Cover 15-6
Software Update 15-7
Function List. 15-7
Text Entry Window Key Assignments 15-13
Symbols 15-14
Pictograms. 15-15
Memory 15-16
Specifications. 15-16
Warranty & Service 15-20
Index 15-21
Objective Index 15-27
Advanced Settings Index 15-30
Customer Service 15-31

Safety Precautions

Read safety precautions before using handset.

- Observe precautions to avoid injury to self or others, or damage to property.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.

These labels indicate the degree of risk from improper use. Make sure you thoroughly understand their meanings before reading on.

Danger	Great risk of death or serious injury[1] from improper use
Warning	Risk of death or serious injury[1] from improper use
Caution	Risk of injury[2] or damage to property[3] from improper use

1 "Serious injury" includes blindness, wounds, low/high heat burns, electric shock, bone fractures, poisoning or other physical harm with aftereffects, or requiring hospitalization or ongoing hospital visits.

2 "Injury" includes wounds, burns, electric shock or other physical harm not requiring hospitalization or ongoing hospital visits.

3 "Damage to property" includes damage to home, furniture, livestock, pets, etc.

These symbols indicate prohibited or compulsory actions. Make sure you thoroughly understand their meanings before reading on.

Prohibited	Prohibited actions
Do Not Disassemble	Disassembly prohibited
Avoid Liquids Or Moisture	Exposure to liquids prohibited
Do Not Use Wet Hands	Use with wet hands prohibited
Compulsory	Compulsory actions
Disconnect Power Source	Unplug Charger from outlet

Handset, Battery, USIM Card, Charger (Sold Separately) & Memory Card (Sold Separately)

⚠ Danger

Use specified battery and Charger (sold separately) only.

Compulsory

Non-specified equipment use may cause battery to leak, overheat, burst or ignite, and may cause Charger to overheat, ignite, malfunction, etc.

Do not disassemble, modify or solder handset or related hardware.

Do Not Disassemble

May cause fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction.
Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite.
Modifying handsets is prohibited by the Radio Law and subject to a penalty.

Do not expose internal handset parts or related hardware to liquids.

Avoid Liquids Or Moisture

Do not leave handset or related hardware wet after exposure to water, pet urine, etc., and do not charge wet battery. May cause overheating, electric shock, fire, injury or malfunction. Use them in an appropriate place properly.

Do not charge battery in or expose handset or related hardware to extreme heat (e.g., near fire or sources of heat, in direct sunlight, inside vehicles, etc.).

Prohibited

May cause warping/malfunction; battery may leak, overheat, ignite or burst. Handset or related hardware may become hot to the touch, leading to burn injuries, etc.

Do not force battery/Charger into handset. Check the direction and retry.

Prohibited

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.

⚠ Warning

Do not place handset, battery or Charger in/on ovens, microwave ovens, pressure cookers, induction stoves or other cooking appliances.

Prohibited

Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite. Handset/Charger may overheat, emit smoke, ignite, malfunction, etc.

Keep handset off and Charger disconnected near gas stations or places with fire/explosion risk.

Compulsory

Handset use near petrochemicals or other flammables may cause fire/explosion.
To prevent fire or explosion, do not use handset near gas or fine particles (coal, dust, metal, etc.).

Do not apply strong shocks or impacts.

Prohibited

Do not drop/throw handset or related hardware. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite, resulting in fire, electric shock, malfunction, etc.

If there is unusual sound/odor, smoke or any other abnormality:

Compulsory

Continued use may cause fire, electric shock, etc.; grasp plug to disconnect Charger from connector.

Keep liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) or conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.) away from Charging terminals, External Device.

Prohibited

May cause short circuit, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.

⚠ Caution

Do not place handset or related hardware on unstable surfaces.

Prohibited

Handset or related hardware may fall, resulting in injury, malfunction, etc.; be especially careful when Vibration is set or during Charge.

Keep handset and related hardware out of infants' reach.

Compulsory

Infants may choke from swallowing handset or related hardware or be injured, etc.

If your child is using handset and related hardware, explain all instructions and supervise usage.

Compulsory

Misuse may cause injury, etc.

Battery

⚠ Danger

Read battery label to confirm battery type; use/dispose of battery accordingly.

Display	Battery type
Li-ion00	Lithium-ion

Do not dispose of battery in fire.

Prohibited

Battery may leak, burst, ignite, etc.

Do not damage battery (with a nail, hammer, foot, etc.) or subject it to strong impacts or shocks.

Prohibited

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.

Keep wire or other metal objects away from battery terminals. Do not carry/store battery with conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.).

Prohibited

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.

If battery fluid gets in eyes, do not rub; rinse with water and consult a doctor immediately.

Compulsory

Eyes may be severely damaged.

⚠ Warning

If battery fluid contacts skin or clothes, discontinue handset use and rinse with clean water immediately.

Compulsory

May cause skin damage.

If battery does not charge properly, stop trying.

Compulsory

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.

If there is abnormal odor, excessive heat, discoloration or distortion, remove battery, being careful not to burn or injure yourself. Avoid fire sources.

Compulsory

Continued use may cause battery to leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.

⚠ Caution

Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse.

Prohibited

Tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take battery to a SoftBank Shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.

Handset

⚠ Warning

Do not use handset while driving or cycling.

Prohibited

Accidents may result.
Phone use while driving or cycling is prohibited by law and subject to a penalty; park in a legal parking space beforehand.

Turn handset power off near electronic devices that employ high precision control systems or weak signals.

Compulsory

May cause electronic malfunctions, etc. Be especially careful near the following devices:
Hearing aids, implanted pacemakers/defibrillators and other electronic medical equipment; fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control devices.

Because handset radio waves may impair aircraft operations, please power off handset while aboard.

Compulsory

When handset use aboard aircraft is allowed, please follow instructions of airline personnel.

Users with a heart condition should adjust ringtone Vibration and Volume as needed.

Compulsory

May cause heart damage.

If thunder is heard while outdoors, turn power off; find cover.

Compulsory

There is a risk of lightning strike or electric shock.

Do not look into Infrared Port during Infrared transmissions.

Eyesight may be affected.

Prohibited

⚠ Caution

Do not use handset when it may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.

Handset use inside vehicles may cause electronic equipment to malfunction, resulting in accidents.

Prohibited

If you experience any skin irritation associated with handset use, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor.

Metal and other materials may cause skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness depending on your physical condition.
For materials, see "Materials & Finishing" (➔P.15-17).

Compulsory

Keep handset away from magnetic cards, etc.

Data on bank cards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be lost.

Prohibited

Do not swing handset by strap.

May harm self or others; strap may break, resulting in injury or handset malfunction/breakage.

Prohibited

Handset may become hot while in use, especially at high temperature.

Prolonged contact with skin may cause burn injuries.

Compulsory

Always maintain some distance from Speaker while ringtones, music or other handset sounds play.

Excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.

Prohibited

When view Digital TV, be sure to view in place with enough light and view from distance, otherwise it may cause decrease in vision.

Compulsory

Moderate handset volume when using Earphone Microphone.

Excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.

Compulsory

Charger (Sold Separately)

⚠ Warning

Do not cover/wrap Charger while charging.

Charger may overheat, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.

Prohibited

Use only the specified voltage.

Non-specified voltages may cause fire, malfunction, etc.

- AC Adapter (sold separately) : AC 100V-240V (only for household wall sockets).

Prohibited

Leave Charger unplugged during periods of disuse; grasp plug to disconnect it.

May cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.

Disconnect Power Source

If liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) seep inside Charger, grasp plug from outlet and disconnect Charger immediately.

May cause electric shock, smoke/fire.

Disconnect Power Source

If plug is dusty, grasp it and disconnect Charger, then clean with a dry cloth.

Fire may result.

Compulsory

Plug Charger firmly into the outlet, keeping the plug and Charger charging terminals away from conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.).

May cause electric shock, short circuit, fire, etc.

Compulsory

Do not touch Charger plug with wet hands.

May cause electric shock or malfunction, etc.

Do Not Use Wet Hands

Do not touch Charger if thunder is heard.

May cause electric shock, etc.

Prohibited

⚠ Caution

Grasp plug and disconnect Charger from outlet before cleaning.

May cause electric shock, etc.

Disconnect Power Source

Always grasp plug (not cord) to disconnect Charger from outlet.

Pulling the plug by cord may damage cord, causing electric shock, fire, etc.

Compulsory

Do not subject Charger (sold separately) to strong shocks or impacts while it is plugged into the outlet.

May cause malfunction or injury.

Prohibited

Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc." (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

⚠ Warning

Persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator should keep handset more than 22 cm away.

Compulsory

Radio waves may interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators.

If you intend to use electronic medical equipment other than implanted pacemaker/defibrillator outside medical facilities, consult the vendor on radio wave effects.

Compulsory

Radio waves may interfere with electronic medical equipment.

Observe these rules inside medical facilities to avoid effects of radio waves on electronic medical equipment:

Compulsory

- Do not enter an operating room or an Intensive or Coronary Care Unit while carrying a handset.
- Keep handset off in hospitals; cancel the setting that turns handset power on automatically (alarm, etc.) beforehand.
- Even in lobbies or other places where handset use is permitted, keep handset off near electronic medical equipment.
- Obey medical facility rules on mobile phone use.

Turn handset off in crowds or trains where persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator may be near; cancel the setting that turns handset power on automatically (alarm, etc.) beforehand.

Compulsory

Radio waves may interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.

General Notes

General Use

- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of any data on handset/Memory Card. Please keep separate records of Phone Book entries, etc.
- Handset transmissions may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels, or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.
- **Beware of eavesdropping.**
  Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.
  - **Eavesdropping**
    Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.

Inside Vehicles

- Never use handset while driving.
- Do not park illegally to use handset.
- Handset use may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.

Aboard Aircraft

- Because handset radio waves may impair aircraft operations, please power off handset while aboard.
  If handset use aboard aircraft is allowed, please follow instructions of airline personnel.

Function Usage Limits

- The following functions are disabled after handset upgrade/replacement or service cancellation:
  - Camera
  - Media Player
  - S! Appli
  - TV
- After a long period of disuse, these functions may be unusable; establish a network connection to restore usability.

Handset Care

- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any resulting damage.
- Use handset between 5°C - 35°C. Avoid extreme temperatures/direct sunlight.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage color filter affecting image color.
- Do not drop or subject handset to shocks.
- Clean handset with a dry, soft cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Never disassemble or modify handset.
- Avoid scratching Display.
- When using headphones, moderate the volume to avoid sound bleed.
- Heavy objects or excessive pressure should be avoided. This may cause malfunction or injury.
  - Do not sit down with handset in pocket.
  - Do not place heavy objects on handset in a bag.
- Insert only specified devices into Headphone Port. Malfunction or damage may result.
- Always turn power off before removing battery. If battery is removed while saving data or sending mail, data may be lost, changed or destroyed.

Keypad Surface Swelling

- Keypad surface might swell up due to drastic atmospheric changes (at high altitudes, aboard high-flying aircraft, etc.) when Battery Cover is closed. This is normal. Keypad will return to its original shape.
- Open Port Cover to release air that may be trapped inside handset.
- Carefully close Battery Cover to avoid trapping excess air inside handset.
- When using a swollen Keypad, take care to avoid damaging protrusions. Original shape will return.

Water Resistance

840SC Water Resistance

- **840SC complies with IPX5 (former JIS protection level 5)[1] and IPX7 (JIS protection level 7)[2] water protection standards, with Port Covers closed and Battery Cover locked firmly.**

[1]IPX5 compliant means that this handset continues to function as a phone after being subjected to a water jet (approximately 12.5 liters/min.) discharged from a nozzle (inner diameter: 6.3 mm), from all directions (approximately 3 m from handset) for at least three minutes.

[2]IPX7 compliant means that this handset continues to function as a phone and no water seeps inside after being gently lowered into a tank filled with still tap water (at room temperature) to the depth of 1 m, and immersed at the bottom for approximately 30 minutes.

- **Warranty does not cover malfunctions resulting from misuse.**

Usage Notes

- Lock Battery Cover and close Port Covers firmly. Foreign matter (hair, sand, fibers, etc.) trapped between contact surfaces may cause seals to fail and expose internal parts to water.
- Leaving Battery/Port Covers open may expose handset to moisture, causing malfunction/electric shock. Power handset off, and remove battery.
- If handset gets wet, moisture might get between Keypad and hinges. Wipe off handset with a clean, dry cloth. Do not leave handset wet.
- To prevent water from getting inside a handset exposed to rain or touched with wet hands, do not open Battery Cover or Port Cover. After handset has completely dried out, slowly open Battery Cover or Port Cover. If liquid does get inside, do not use handset; power off, remove battery, and take it to a SoftBank Shop.
- To prevent water from getting inside handset when areas around Port Cover or Battery Cover are wet, wait until handset has completely dried, before slowly opening and closing covers.
- Handset is resistant to fresh/tap water at room temperature (5°C - 35°C) only.

Precautions

- Do not expose handset to liquids (soaps, detergents, soapy water, seawater, pool water, hot spring water, boiling water, chemicals, or perspiration, etc.) other than fresh/tap water. Do not expose handset to sand or mud.
- If handset is exposed to liquid other than fresh/tap water, immediately rinse off handset with water. Position handset approximately 10 cm from tap or shower head and wash with a low pressure flow (less than six liters per minute, at room temperature (5°C - 35°C)). Hand wash (do not use brushes or sponges) with Battery Cover in place and locked, and Port Cover closed.
- Do not expose handset to bathtubs or swimming pools. Do not use handset (open or close handset, or use Keypad) in water.
- Handset is not resistant to water at high pressure. Do not expose handset to tap or shower water flowing faster than six liters per minute, drop it into water, or submerge.
- Do not expose handset to extreme humidity for long periods; avoid prolonged use in bath/shower rooms.
- Use handset within 5°C - 35°C (up to 40°C for temporary use in bath/shower rooms, etc.) and 35% - 90% humidity.
- Handset is not heat-resistant. Do not use in saunas. Avoid hot air from dryers, etc.
- Avoid extreme temperatures (e.g., near stoves, inside refrigerators, etc.).
- Volume may be low when Microphone/Earpiece/Speaker is wet; dry handset before use. After drying out, the volume will return to normal.
- Avoid placing handset directly on sand. Sand may penetrate Earpiece, Speaker, etc., resulting in low volume.
- Do not move handset directly from a cold place to a warm, humid place; condensation may occur. Should this happen, let handset dry naturally, at room temperature.
- Handset does not float.
- Keep handset out of heavy rain.
- Do not let liquid-exposed handset remain wet; exposure to cold may freeze liquid causing malfunctions.

Maintaining Waterproof Performance

- Do not subject handset to strong shocks or impacts; do not poke Microphone, Earpiece, Speaker, etc. with a cotton swab or sharp object;
- Port Cover and gasket play the important role of maintaining waterproofness. Do not remove or damage them. In addition, do not allow foreign particles to adhere to them.
- Do not insert sharp objects into Port Cover gaps; may damage gasket and affect water resistance.
- Do not leave Port Cover bent back for prolonged periods of time to plug in Earphone Microphone or Charger. It might deform Port Cover affecting waterproofing.
- If Port Cover gasket is damaged or deformed, replace it with a new one.
- To maintain water resistance, replace gaskets every two years regardless of their condition. For gasket replacements, contact a SoftBank Shop.
- Damaged Battery/Port Cover affects water resistance; contact a SoftBank Shop.

Charging Precautions

- Battery and optional accessories are not waterproofed. Avoid exposure to liquids or high humidity (e.g., precipitation, bath/shower room, restroom, etc.) ; may cause fire, electric shock or damage.
- Never charge battery while handset is wet; may cause fire or damage due to electric shock or short-circuit.
- Close Port Cover firmly after charging via External Device Port.
- Do not touch Charger with wet hands. Electric shock may occur.
- Do not use Charger in rooms in which water is regularly used (kitchen, bath/shower room, etc.); may cause fire or electric shock.

If handset gets wet, see "Drying Off Handset" (➔P.15-5).
If Port Cover becomes detached, see "Reattaching Port Cover" (➔P.15-6).

Precautions Regarding the UV Checker

- To take correct measurements using UV Checker, aim UV Sensor at the sun two or three times.
- UV Checker may not take correct measurements due to interference by the weather or surrounding buildings.
- Use UV Checker as a reference ; measurements may not be accurate.
- Correct measurements might not be taken if UV Sensor is soiled (fingerprints, foreign particles, etc.).
- Be aware that UV Sensor might be damaged by drastic temperature fluctuations.
- UV Sensor may not function if handset is dropped, or suffers a strong impact.
- Do not allow UV Sensor to remain exposed (handset open) to strong sunlight and ultraviolet rays. Be aware that this might damage sensor.
- UV Checker will not function if handset is closed. Use with handset open.
- If UV Checker is successively used, it may not function normally.
- Area surrounding UV Sensor may become discolored due to prolonged usage. This is not a malfunction.
- UV Sensor does not function in water.
- Actual intensity of ultraviolet light may vary from UV Checker measurements. Always use sunblock lotion etc. to protect one's skin from ultraviolet rays.
- Even if UV Checker shows, "Not strong (You can safely spend time outdoors.)," this does not mean that UV conditions are safe.
- UV Checker measurement times may vary depending by environment and conditions.

Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials for copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only. Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera.
The software contained in handset is copyrighted material; copyright, moral right, and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile, or reverse-engineer the software, and do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

Trademarks

- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:
  4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773 5,101,501
  5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073 5,228,054 5,535,239
  5,267,261 5,544,196 5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338
  5,600,754 5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569
  5,710,784 5,778,338
- Video Call, S! Mail, PC Site Browser, S! Quick News, S! Appli, S! Addressbook Back-up, Graphic Mail, Auto Art, Feeling Mail, S-1 battle, S! Information Channel and Weather Indicator, Content Value Package, Simple Select Video, Tada-Deco, Tada-Komi, Tada-Game, Tada-Utaban are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.
- "SOFTBANK", SOFTBANK's equivalent in Japanese, and the SOFTBANK logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and in other countries.
- "Yahoo!", the "Yahoo!" and "Y!" logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.
- This product contains ACCESS Co., Ltd.'s NetFront Internet browser software. NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and in other countries.

ACCESS NetFront®

- Part of the software in this product incorporates a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD ("MPEG-4 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.
- Contains Macromedia® Flash® Flash Lite™ technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated.
- Copyright© 1995-2005 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
- Macromedia, Flash, Macromedia Flash, and Macromedia Flash Lite are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.
- JBlend™ is incorporated in this product. JBlend™ is a Java™ execution environment developed by Aplix Corporation for implementing advanced performance and fast operation on small-memory systems.
- Powered by JBlend™ Technology.
  JBlend and JBlend logos are registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.

JBlend™

- Powered by JBlend™, ©1997-2006 Aplix Corporation.All rights reserved.
- JBlend and all JBlend-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
- Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

Java POWERED

- "Chaku-Uta®" and "Chaku-Uta Full®" are registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment Corp.
- microSD™/microSDHC™ is a trademark of SD Association.

- QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.
- Powered by SwiftDecoder™ Copyright ©1996-2007, Omniplanar, Inc. All Rights Reserved.
- Windows and Windows Media Player are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- BookSurfing is registered trademark of CELSYS, Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc., INFOCITY, Inc.
- Windows is an abbreviation for the Microsoft Windows operating system.
- Other company and product names mentioned herein are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

SAR Certification

840SC meets the technical standards of Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC) regarding radio wave absorption by a human body.

These technical standards are established on a scientific basis to prevent radio waves emitted from wireless devices such as mobile phones that are used close to human head from affecting human health. These standards assure that the SAR (Specific Absorption Rate), an indicator of the amount of average energy absorbed in the side of a human head, must not exceed the permissive value of 2 W/kg*. This value includes a substantial safety margin designated to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and physical size. The value is equal to the international guideline recommended by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) that has a cooperative relationship with the World Health Organization (WHO).

The highest SAR value for 840SC is 0.183 W/kg. This value is obtained in accordance with the MIC testing procedure with the mobile phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level. While there may be differences in the SAR levels depending on phones, they all meet the MIC's permissible value. Because mobile phones are designed to employ the minimum power level required for the communication with the base station, the SAR of the phone during a call is usually below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please see the following Websites:
MIC: http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/j/ele/index.htm
ARIB: http://www.arib-emf.org/

*The guideline is defined by relevant laws and regulations associated with the Radio Law (No. 2 of Article 14 of Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment).

SoftBank Mobile Body SAR Policy

* Body SAR: The SAR value at the maximum transmission power when continuously talking with handset placed on the body and using earphone-microphone.

** Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) : The value measured when having talked continuously for six minutes.

*** Placement on the body: Measurements are taken with the rear of handset facing the body at a distance of 1.5 cm as the ordinary handset position. In order to comply with radio frequency exposure requirements, use an accessory (e.g. belt clip, holster) that does not contain metallic parts to maintain a 1.5 cm separation between the body and handset.

For further information, see the following SoftBank Mobile Website:
http://www.softbankmobile.co.jp/ja/info/public/emf/emf02.html

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg and the highest SAR value for this device when tested at the ear was 0.737 W/kg*. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide. In this case, the highest tested SAR value is 0.183 W/kg.

As SAR is measured utilizing the devices highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the network.

The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a hands-free device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body.

*The tests are carried out in accordance with international guidelines for testing.

Memo

Getting Started

1

Parts & Functions 1-2
Handset 1-2
Display Indicators 1-3

USIM Card 1-4
Before Using USIM Card 1-4
USIM Card Installation 1-5

Battery & Charger 1-6
Before Using Battery/Charger 1-6
Battery Installation 1-7
Charge Battery 1-8

Power On/Off 1-9
Power On 1-9
Power Off 1-9

Account Details 1-10
Viewing Account Details 1-10
Editing Account Details 1-10

Handling Precautions (Key Lock) 1-11

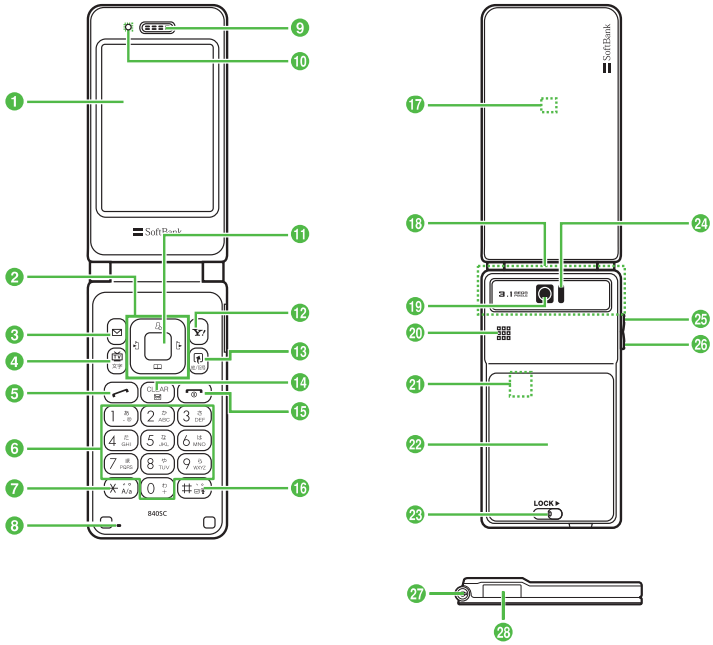
Minding Mobile Manners 1-11
Offline Mode 1-11
Manner Mode 1-11
Changing Mode Settings 1-12

Security Codes 1-12
Phone Password 1-12
Center Access Code (Network Password) 1-13
PIN Code 1-13
USIM Password 1-13

Advanced Settings 1-13
Account Details 1-13

Parts & Functions

Handset



1. Display
2. Multi Selector
   Select menu items, move cursor, scroll window, etc.
3. Mail Key/Left Softkey
   Open Messaging menu. Also, execute Left Softkey command or function.
4. TV/Character Key
   Show TV menu. Also, toggle text entry modes in text entry window.
5. Start Key
   Make and receive Voice Calls. In Standby, press to open Call Log (All).
6. 0 – 9 Keypad
   Enter numbers or characters. Also, select menu items.
7. * Key
   Long press to open Manner mode Settings.
8. Microphone
9. Earpiece
10. UV Sensor
    Use to gauge the intensity of UV rays.
11. Main Menu Key/Center Key
    Open main menu. Also, execute Center Softkey command or function.

⑫ Yahoo! Keitai Key/Right Softkey
Open Yahoo! Keitai main menu. Also, execute Right Softkey command or function.

⑬ Shortcut Key
Using Shortcuts (P.2-2).

⑭ Clear/Back Key
Delete entered text or return to the previous operation step.

⑮ Power/End Key
Turn power on/off or end operations.

⑯ #/Manner Key
Enter symbols, etc. Also, activate or cancel Manner mode (1+ seconds).

⑰ External Light
Flashes for Missed Call or Incoming Call/ Mail; illuminates in red while charging.

⑱ Internal Antenna

⑲ Camera
Capture images.

⑳ Speaker

㉑ Memory Card Port

㉒ Battery Cover
Remove to access Battery or USIM Card.

㉓ Battery Cover Lever

㉔ Infrared Port
Use for infrared data transmissions.

㉕ Side Key
Raise ringer or Media Player volume.
Long press to activate UV Checker (1 + seconds).

㉖ Side Key
Lower ringer or Media Player volume.
Long press to activate Dummy Call (1 + seconds).

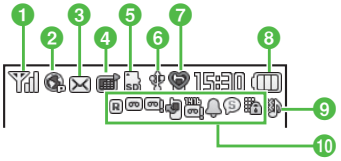
㉗ Strap Eyelet

㉘ Charger/External Device Port
Connect Charger, PC, etc.

Note

- **Handset transmits and receives signals via Internal Antenna. There is no External Antenna. Voice quality may vary depending on where/how handset is used.**
- **Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over the area containing Internal Antenna.**
- **Display brightness changes or Display flickers depending on surroundings.**

Display Indicators



❶ Signal strength (more bars indicates stronger signal)
Out-of-range (***Language*** set to Japanese)
Out-of-range (***Language*** except Japanese)
Offline Mode

❷ SSL connected
3G Network connected (ready)
3G Network connected (in use)
Packet Communication unavailable
Voice Call in progress (flashes when placing or receiving calls)
Video Call in progress (flashes when placing or receiving calls)

❸ New mail
Sending mail
Receiving mail
Delivery Report active
Memory full (S! Mail/SMS)
Downloading Content Key

4 Music playing
Music paused
Recording TV program
Reservation set
S! Appli
S! Appli paused
S! Appli Activation Request

5 Memory Card inserted
Read from/write on Memory Card
Software Update required
PC Site Browser connected
Unread S! Quick News
Unread S! Information Channels

6 USB connected
(yellow) USB in use
(gray) Infrared activated
(red) Infrared transmission in progress
Data synchronized

7 Manner mode
Drive mode
Meeting mode
Activity mode
Good Night Timer set

8 Battery strong
Battery moderate
Battery low
Battery weak (charge now)
(flashing in red) Battery empty
Battery low (Battery saving mode)
Battery weak (Battery saving mode)

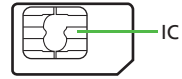
9 Ringer and Vibration activated for calls
Ringer active for calls
Vibration active for calls
Ringer & Vibration disabled for calls

10 Roaming active
Answering Machine active
Unheard Answering Machine message
Voicemail/Call Forwarding (***No reply***) activated
Unheard Voicemail
Alarm set
Schedule set
Schedule with Alarm set
Tasks set
Tasks with Alarm set
Secret Mode
Password Lock activated
All Keys locked

USIM Card

Before Using USIM Card

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including handset number and limited storage for Phone Book entries and SMS. Install USIM Card to use handset; power off handset to insert/remove USIM Card.



USIM Card

Insert USIM Card into another compatible handset to access SMS and Phone Book entries saved on USIM Card. Note the following precautions regarding USIM Card usage and care (see USIM Card User Guide for details) :

- Avoid using excessive force when inserting/removing USIM Card.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for damages resulting from inserting USIM Card into IC card readers or other third party devices.
- Always keep USIM Card IC chip clean.
- Clean USIM Card IC chip with a soft, dry cloth.
- Do not attach labels to USIM Card; malfunction may result.

Note

- USIM Card is the property of SoftBank Mobile.
- If USIM Card is lost or damaged, you will be charged for its reissue.
- Return USIM Card to SoftBank Mobile upon termination of subscription.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice.
- If USIM Card or handset with USIM Card inserted is lost or stolen in Japan or abroad, immediately contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (➔P.15-31) to suspend service.
- Handset/USIM Card repairs, replacement, or upgrades may deactivate Chaku-Uta®, Chaku-Uta Full® or video files on handset/Memory Card.
- Back up USIM Card files. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for lost files.

USIM Card Installation

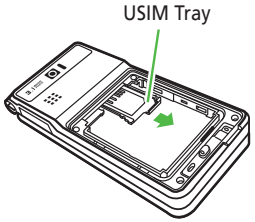
Note

- Inserting USIM Card with excessive force may damage it or handset.
- Do not misplace a removed USIM Card.
- To prevent damaging it, avoid touching IC chip when inserting or removing USIM Card. Do not touch battery contacts.
- Do not remove USIM Card while handset is powered on; handset may restart.
- Do not exert excessive force on USIM Tray. It may cause malfunctions or damage.

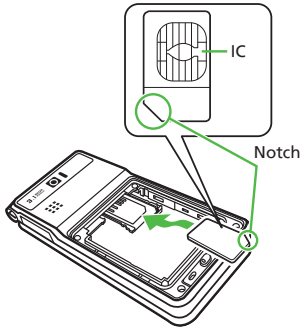
Inserting

1 Remove Battery Cover/battery (➔P.1-6 Removing 1 to 3)

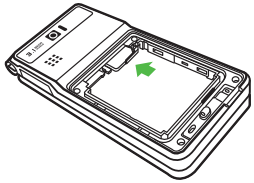
2 Pull out USIM Tray



3 With IC chip down, insert USIM Card into USIM Tray as shown

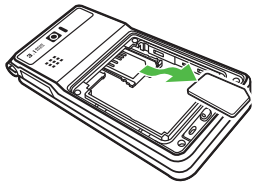


4 Push in USIM Tray



Removing

1. **Remove Battery Cover/battery (P.1-6 Removing 1 to 3)**
2. **Pull out USIM Tray**
3. **Gently slide USIM Card out with lifting up**



Battery & Charger

Before Using Battery/Charger

Charge battery before first use of handset or after long periods of disuse.

Note

- **Use specified Charger only.**
- **Battery must be inside handset to charge.**
- **When not in use, unplug Charger from outlet.**

Battery

- Long periods of disuse may affect battery's ability to hold a full charge. Charge battery at least once every six months while not in use. Otherwise, battery may become unusable.
- Depending on usage, bulges may appear near end of battery life; this does not affect safety.
- Handset uses a lithium-ion battery; charge battery anytime without damaging its ability to hold a charge.
- Do not charge battery under the following conditions:
  - In ambient temperatures beyond 5°C - 40°C
  - In high levels of humidity, vibration or dust (may cause malfunction)
  - Near a radio receiver (may cause feedback)
- Handset or Charger may warm while charging. This is normal, however, should they become very hot to touch, stop charging and contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.15-31).
- Battery is a consumable; replace it if operating time shortens noticeably.

Battery Life

Battery time/life may be reduced by any of the following:

- Environmental Factors
  - Storing/using handset beyond 5°C - 40°C
  - Using handset in poor signal conditions
  - Debris on handset, battery or Charger Port
- Operational Factors
  - Camera use
  - Media Player use
  - Heavy use (e.g., for using messaging)
  - Digital TV use
- Settings
  - Using Slide show
  - Increasing ***Brightness*** or ***Duration***
  - Using Media Player with Backlight set to ***Always On***

Battery Disposal

Do not dispose of exhausted batteries with ordinary refuse. Tape over battery terminals before disposal or take to a SoftBank Shop. Follow any and all regulations regarding battery disposal.
Lithium-ion batteries are recyclable.

When Battery Runs Out

When battery is weak, a warning appears and handset beeps. Charge or replace battery; otherwise handset will automatically turn off.

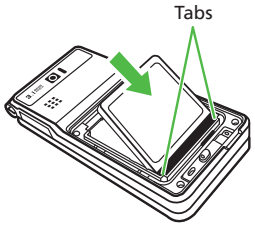
Battery Installation

Inserting

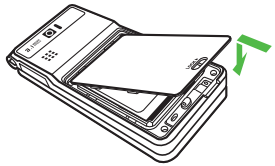
Note

- Gently insert battery to avoid damaging handset tabs.
- Without cover, battery may fall out. Attach Battery Cover before use.
- Strong impacts may damage Battery Cover.

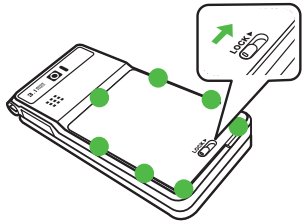
1. Remove Battery Cover/battery (P.1-7 Removing 1 to 2)
2. Fit battery into handset as shown



3. Replace Battery Cover



4. Lock Battery Cover Lever



Note

Maintaining Waterproofing

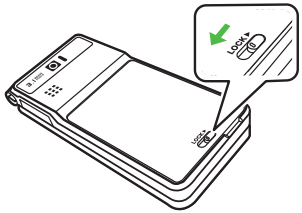
If handset is wet, wipe it off with a clean, dry cloth before removing Battery Cover or Port Cover. Clean foreign objects off gasket or handset before replacing Battery Cover or Port Cover.

Press down on Battery Cover edges (●); once completely sealed, move slider to LOCK position.

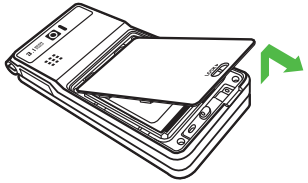
Removing

Always turn handset off before removing battery.
Never remove battery while Charger is connected.

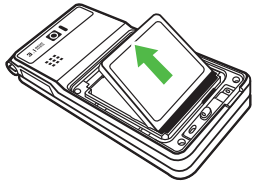
1. Unlock Battery Cover Lever



2. Lift Battery Cover up and remove as shown



3 Lift battery up and remove as shown

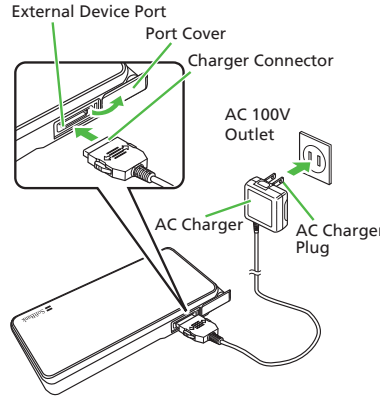


Charge Battery

- Use specified AC Charger ZTDAA1 (sold separately). In this guide, ZTDAA1 is referred to as "AC Charger."
- If handset is on while Charger is connected, battery indicator shows charge level, charging as follows: → → . flashes when battery is fully charged. If handset is off, ***Charging***... appears while charging and when battery is charged, ***Battery full*** appears. External Light illuminates in red while charging.
- An empty battery requires approximately 150 minutes to be charged with power off. Charging time may vary depending upon the ambient temperature.

AC Charger

1 Open Port Cover; with label down, insert Charger Connector into External Device Port



2 Pull up AC Charger prongs and plug it into an AC 100V outlet

3 When battery is charged, disconnect handset, close Port Cover, and unplug AC Charger

USB Charge

Connect handset to PC via USB Cable to charge battery.

1 Open Port Cover; with label down, insert USB Cable Connector into External Device Port

2 Insert USB Plug into PC USB port

3 When battery is charged, disconnect handset, close Port Cover, and remove USB Plug

- USB charging takes longer; charging time varies according to the PC. A weak battery may not charge via USB.

Power On/Off

Power On

1 Press ⏻ until Display illuminates

- "Please wait..." and precautions for maintaining waterproofness appear.

Standby Display

- To confirm handset phone number, press ■ → 0 +. Your phone number appears in Account Details. Edit or use contents (➔P.1-10).
- When handset is left open and idle, Display automatically shuts down to conserve power. Adjust Backlight time (➔P.14-6).

- The first time Messaging, Yahoo!, etc. is pressed or a function requiring a network connection is activated, Retrieve NW info confirmation appears. Choose ***Yes*** and follow onscreen instructions.
  - Retrieve NW info confirmation appears after replacing USIM Card or executing ***All reset***.
  - Retrieving Network Info sets date and time. Network Services (SMS, S! Mail and Yahoo! Keitai, etc.) are available.
  - Retrieve Network Info manually (➔P.14-26).
  - This guide describes operations with date and time set unless noted otherwise.

Power Off

1 Press ⏻ until Display goes dark

- SoftBank logo appears and handset powers off.

Note

• For proper shut down, press ⏻ until Display goes dark.

Account Details

Save your name, mail address, blood type, and other information as Account Details.

Viewing Account Details

1 ■ → 0

- Default: Only handset phone number appears.
- Alternatively, in Standby, press ■ → ***Phone*** → ***My details***.

Editing Account Details

Example: Save name, phone number, mail address

- See "Adding Information to Phone Book Entry" (➲P.2-17) to save other information.

1 ■ → 0 → ✉ **(Edit)**

2 **Select Last name field → Enter last name**

3 **Select First name field → Enter first name**

4 **Select Reading:Last name → Edit reading as required**

5 **Select Reading:First name → Edit reading as required**

6 **Select Phone number field → Enter number → *Private*/*Business*/*Home*/*Office*/*Fax*/*Video call*/*Others***

7 **Select E-mail address field → Enter mail address → *Private*/*Home*/*Office*/*Others***

8 ✉ **(Save)**

- See "Text Entry" (➲P.2-7) to enter text.
- Default: Handset phone number appears.

Advanced

Advanced Settings ☞P.1-13

- Copying Item in Account Details
- Sending Account Details
- Saving in Data Folder
- Resetting Account Details

Handling Precautions (Key Lock)

Note these precautions when handling handset.

- Activate Key Lock before putting handset in a pocket.
- When carrying AC Charger, retract plug blades. Do not pull/twist power cord; doing so may damage it.

Activate to prevent accidental operation when carrying handset in a bag or pocket, etc.

1 ■ **(1 + seconds)**

- Key Lock activates.

- When Key Lock is set, appears at top of Display. If any key is pressed, a guidance to cancel Key Lock appears.
- To cancel Key Lock, press ■ for 1+ seconds while guidance appears on Display.

Minding Mobile Manners

Please take care not to disturb others when using handset.

- Turn your handset off in theaters, museums, and other places where silence is the norm.
- Keep your handset off aboard airplanes*, inside hospitals, or in other places where handset use is prohibited.
  *If handset use is permitted, follow airline instructions for proper use.
- Refrain from using your handset in quiet places such as restaurants, hotel lobbies, or elevators.
- Observe announcements or posted instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from handset use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

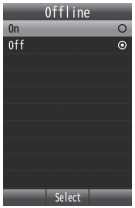
Handset offers two manner-related modes.

- Offline Mode
  Temporarily suspends all handset transmissions. Other functions may be used.
- Manner Mode
  Mutes handset sounds and activates Vibration for all alerts, tones, and Alarms. Use Manner Key to activate or cancel Manner mode.
  In addition to Manner, handset features Normal, Drive, Meeting and Outdoor as the set Ringtone or operation sound.

- Activating Offline Mode or Manner mode mutes ringer. Alternatively, set Ringtone volume or Vibration (➔P.14-4).

Offline Mode

1 ■ → ***Settings*** → ***Call settings*** → ***Offline*** → ***On*** **or** ***Off***



- Power off handset in Offline Mode, confirmation appears. Choose ***Yes*** to power on handset in Offline Mode.

Manner Mode

Cancel settings for Manner mode from current setting mode.

1 (#) **(1 + seconds)**

- When Manner mode is active, appears.
- Even if Manner mode is active, shutter click sounds for Camera.
- Press (#) for 1+ seconds to cancel Manner mode. Canceling Manner mode, returns handset to mode set before Manner was activated.

Changing Mode Settings

Handset features five modes, including Manner.

1 (1 + seconds)

2 ***Normal, Manner, Drive, Meeting,* or *Outdoor***

Select mode by usage; edit Normal mode or Manner mode settings as required (➲P.15-11).

Mode	Description
Normal Mode*	All Sounds & Alerts settings apply
Manner Mode	Mutes handset system sounds
Drive Mode	Mutes ringer; plays Driving Message and activates Answering Machine for calls
Meeting Mode	Mutes Ringtones & system sound
Outdoor Mode	Maximizes tone volume

*Normal mode indicator does not appear in Standby.

Advanced

Settings

- Set Keypad Light Illumination Mode (☞P.14-3)
- Set Phone Sounds (☞P.14-4)
- Set System Sounds (☞P.14-4)
- Set External Light Color for Incoming Transmissions (☞P.14-5)
- Set External Light Color for Notification (☞P.14-5)
- Set External Light Color When Handset is Closed (☞P.14-5)
- Activate/Cancel Offline Mode (☞P.14-11)
- Switch Manner Mode (☞P.14-7)

Security Codes

Phone Password, Center Access Code (Network Password) are required to use handset.

Note

- **Write down Phone Password and Center Access Code (Network Password). If you lose a code, contact Customer Service (➲P.15-31).**
- **Do not reveal Phone Password and Center Access Code (Network Password) to others. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for damage caused by misuse of these codes by others.**
- **Entering incorrect Network Password three consecutive times locks Call Barring settings. To resolve, Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (➲P.15-31).**
- **If Center Access Code (Network Password) was changed, to set Call Barring, input the new Center Access Code (Network Password).**

Phone Password

The four-digit number (Default: 9999) is required to operate/change some handset functions.

- Entered Phone Password digits are represented with *.
- If incorrect, an error message appears. Try again.
- Phone Password can be changed on handset (➲P.11-3).

Center Access Code (Network Password)

Four-digit number specified at subscription; required for changing service subscriptions, for activating optional services, or for operating handset from landlines.

For changing Center Access Code (Network Password), contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (➔P.15-31).

PIN Code

USIM Card features two security codes: PIN and PIN2.

PIN Code

Use PIN (four- to eight-digit) to prevent unauthorized use of handset by others.

- Modify PIN with handset (➔P.11-3).
- When PIN Lock is activated, PIN entry is required each time handset is turned on or whenever USIM Card is re-inserted (➔P.11-4).

PIN2 Code

PIN2 (four- to eight-digit) is required for resetting ***Call time & cost*** or editing ***Set max cost limit***, etc.

- Modify PIN2 with handset (➔P.11-3).

Canceling PIN Lock (PUK/PUK2 Code)

Incorrectly entering PIN or PIN2 three consecutive times activates PIN Lock limiting function access. Enter PUK (PIN Unlocking Key) Code to cancel PIN Lock.

For more information, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (➔P.15-31).

Note

- **Entering PUK or PUK2 incorrectly ten consecutive times activates PUK Lock, disabling handset. Note PUK and PUK2.**
- **PUK Lock cannot be canceled. Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (➔P.15-31).**

USIM Password

Use this code to authenticate a USIM Card. If USIM Password matches, USIM Card is valid. Set ***USIM lock*** to ***On*** to set USIM Password.

Advanced Settings

Account Details

Editing Account Details

■ → ***Phone*** → ***My details*** → ✉ (Edit) → (➔P.2-13 Creating New Entries 2)

Copying Item in Account Details

■ → ***Phone*** → ***My details*** → Highlight an item → Y! → ***Copy item***

- Paste copied item in text entry window.

Sending Account Details

■ → ***Phone*** → ***My details*** → Y! → ***Send***

■ **To Send via Message**

Via message → (➔P.4-4 S! Mail 2)

■ **To Send via Infrared**

Via infrared (➔P.13-3)

Saving in Data Folder

■ → ***Phone*** → ***My details*** → Y! → ***Save to Data Folder*** → ***Phone/Memory card*** → ***Yes***

- To save a file to ***Memory card***, insert Memory Card.

Resetting Account Details

■ → ***Phone*** → ***My details*** → Y! → ***Reset*** → ***Yes***

- All Account Details other than phone number saved in USIM Card are reset.

Memo

Basic Operations

2

Accessing Functions 2-2
Using Shortcuts 2-2
Using Main Menu 2-2
Using Shortcut Keys 2-3

Incoming Settings 2-4
Changing Volume 2-4
Changing Ringtone 2-4
Setting Vibration 2-4

Standby Display Options 2-5
Wallpaper 2-5
Slide Show 2-5
Color Theme 2-6

Text Entry 2-7
Text Entry Window 2-7
Changing Entry Mode 2-8
Kana/Kanji 2-8
Katakana/Alphabet/Number 2-9
Symbol 2-9
Pictograms/Emoticons 2-9
Line Break 2-10
Entering Space 2-10
Hangul 2-11
Using Quick Address List 2-11
Deleting/Editing 2-11

User's Dictionary (Japanese) 2-12
Editing User's Dictionary 2-12
Saving to User's Dictionary 2-12

Phone Book 2-13
Phone Book Window 2-13
Creating New Entries 2-13
Entry Search 2-14
Calling from Phone Book 2-15
Deleting Phone Book Entries 2-15

Advanced Settings 2-16
Standby 2-16
Text Entry 2-16
User's Dictionary 2-17
Phone Book 2-17

Accessing Functions

Use following methods to access handset applications:

- Shortcuts
- Main Menu (Standard Menu)
- Main Menu (Simple Menu)
- Shortcut Keys

Using Shortcuts

Select ***Call***, ***Messaging***, ***Yahoo!***, or ***Media***. Use multiple functions at the same time (e.g. use the Internet during a call).

1 In Standby or active function, ⊡

2 ⊡ to highlight item → ● (Select)

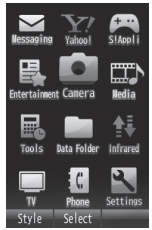
- To exit an active function, open the window and press ☎.
- To exit all active functions, highlight ⊡ at the Shortcuts and press ● (Yes).

- When you exit all active functions, a confirmation may appear for some functions. When the confirmation appears, choose ***Yes***.
- If Camera is active, shortcuts do not appear in text entry window.

Using Main Menu

Using Standard Menu

1 In Standby, ●



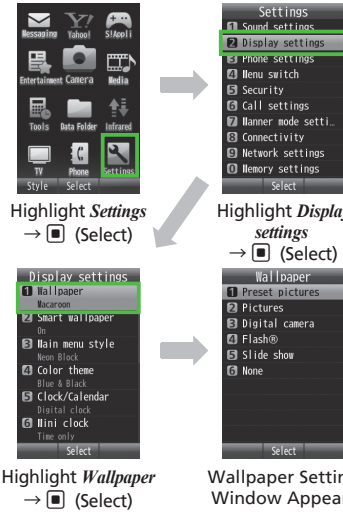
Main Menu

2 Highlight item → ● (Select)

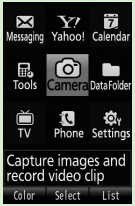
3 Repeat Step 2 to select item

- Press CLEAR to return to the previous operation step.
- Press ☎ to exit menu. Handset returns to Standby. If multiple functions are active, active window appears.
- Press ☎ to cancel operation. Handset returns to Standby or previous window. In some menus, a confirmation appears.
- Speed Dial numbers appear in item or list window. Press corresponding Keypad key to select an item.
- If menu title is too long to view, hold menu to show. Change text scroll speed whole menu title (➔P.14-6).

Example: Selecting ***Wallpaper***
Settings → Display settings → Wallpaper



• Perform the same operation from simple menu. However, some functions are unavailable.



Toggling Standard Menu/Simple Menu

1. ■ → *Settings* → *Menu switch*
2. *Standard menu*/*Simple menu* → ■ (Select)

Using Shortcut Keys

In Standby, use the following keys to access functions.

Key		Menu/Function
	Short Press	Messaging menu
	Long Press	Create S! Mail
	Short Press	Yahoo! Keitai main menu
	Long Press	Yahoo! Keitai menu
	Short Press	TV menu
	Long Press	Activate TV
	Short Press	Shortcuts
	Short Press	Favorites
	Short Press	Open Call Log (Received)
	Short Press	Open Call Log (Dialed)
	Short Press	Search Phone Book
	Long Press	Add to Phone Book
	Short Press	Main menu
	Long Press	Activate/Cancel Key Lock
	Short Press	Open Call Log (All)

Key		Menu/Function
CLEAR	Short Press	Play answering machine
CLEAR	Long Press	Activate/Cancel Answering Machine
*	Long Press	Manner mode setting window
#	Long Press	Toggle Manner mode On/Off
	Short Press	Adjust Earpiece volume
	Long Press	UV Checker
	Short Press	Adjust Earpiece volume
	Long Press	Activating Dummy Call (set by Side Key (down))

Incoming Settings

Adjust Volume, Ringtone and Vibration settings. Use Ringtone/Vibration pattern to identify caller.

Changing Volume

Select from six volume levels: ***0*** (off) to ***5***.

1 ■ → ***Settings*** → ***Sound settings*** → ***Volume***

2 **Select incoming type**

3 ✿ **to adjust volume → ■ (Select)**

- Alternatively, press 🔊 / 🔉 to adjust volume.

• Highlight volume → ✉ (Play) to playback.

Changing Ringtone

Besides presets, get Ring songs, music, videos, or Flash® Ringtones via Internet for handset use.

1 ■ → ***Settings*** → ***Sound settings*** → ***Ringtone***

2 **Select incoming type**

3 **Select Ringtone type**

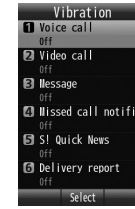
4 **Select Ringtone file**

• Highlight file name → ✉ (Play) to playback.

Setting Vibration

Select Vibration Pattern from following options: ***Off***, ***Pattern 1*** to ***Pattern 5***.

1 ■ → ***Settings*** → ***Sound settings*** → ***Vibration***



2 **Select incoming type**

3 **Select Vibration**

- **To Cancel Vibration**
  Off
- **To Select Vibration Pattern**
  Pattern 1 to ***Pattern 5***

• Highlight file name → ✉ (Play) to view a pattern.

Advanced

Settings

- Adjust Volume (☞P.14-4)
- Set Ringtone for Voice Call/Video Call (☞P.14-4)
- Set Ringtone to Something Other than Voice Call/Video Call (☞P.14-4)
- Set Ringtone Duration to Something Other than Voice Call/Video Call (☞P.14-4)
- Search Machi-Uta™ (☞P.14-4)
- Set Machi-Uta™ (☞P.14-4)
- Register/Cancel Machi-Uta™ (☞P.14-4)
- View Instruction for Machi-Uta™ (☞P.14-4)
- Set Vibration (☞P.14-4)

Standby Display Options

Wallpaper

Set still image, animation or Slide show to appear in Standby. Alternatively, set ***Wallpapers*** to ***None***.

1 ■ → ***Settings*** → ***Display settings*** → ***Wallpaper***

2 **Highlight file name**

■ **To Set Preset Pictures**
Preset pictures → Select file → ■ (Set)

■ **To Set Image from Pictures**
Pictures → Select file → ■ (Set)

■ **To Set Image from Digital Camera Folder**
Digital camera → Select file → ■ (Set)

■ **To Set Flash® File as Wallpaper**
Flash® → Select file → ■ (Set)

■ **To Set Slide Show**
Slide show → (➲P.2-5 Slide Show 2)

■ **To Set None**
None

- Set file in Memory Card, confirmation appears. Press ***Yes*** to set.

Slide Show

Set up to nine images to appear in sequence in Standby.

1 ■ → ***Settings*** → ***Display settings*** → ***Wallpaper*** → ***Slide show***

2 ■ **(Add)** → **Check Images** → ✉ **(Done)**

- With Memory Card inserted, press ✉ to toggle handset and Memory Card.
- Set file in Memory Card for slide show, confirmation appears. Press ***Yes*** to set.

3 Edit Slide show

■ **To Preview**
✉ (Preview) → ***Yes*** or ***No***

■ **To Set Effect**
Highlight effect → ☎ to select item

■ **To Change Transmission Time for a Still Image**
Highlight duration → ☎ to select time

4 ■ (Set) → *Yes* or *No*

• To adjust slide size
To fit image to Display, choose ***Yes*** in 4.
For original proportion, choose ***No***.

Color Theme

Set background/title/focus color to your favorite color.

1 ■ → *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Color theme* → *Customize* → ✉ (Edit)

2 Highlight background color → ■ (Next)

3 Highlight title color → ■ (Next)

4 Highlight focus color → ■ (Save)

Advanced

Settings

- Change User Interface Language (☞P.14-2)
- Set Time Zone Updating (☞P.14-2)
- Change Home Zone Time (☞P.14-2)
- Activate/Cancel Daylight Savings Time (☞P.14-2)
- Set Time (☞P.14-2)
- Set Date (☞P.14-2)
- Change Time Format (☞P.14-2)
- Change Date Format (☞P.14-2)
- Set Time Correction (☞P.14-2)
- Set Earphone Settings (☞P.14-2)
- Change Wallpaper (☞P.14-5)
- Set/Cancel Smart Wallpaper (☞P.14-5)
- Change Wallpaper for Smart Wallpaper (☞P.14-5)
- Change Main Menu Settings (☞P.14-5)
- Set the Color Theme for Menu (☞P.14-5)
- Change Clock/Calendar (☞P.14-6)
- Set Mini Clock (☞P.14-6)
- Set Font Type (☞P.14-6)
- Set Text Size in List Font (☞P.14-6)
- Change Text Scroll Speed for Menu List (☞P.14-6)
- Adjust Display Brightness (☞P.14-6)
- Set Backlight Time (☞P.14-6)
- Set Backlight Dimmer Time (☞P.14-6)
- Set Battery Saving Mode (☞P.14-6)
- Set Text Type in Dialling Display (☞P.14-6)
- Set Text Size in Dialling Display (☞P.14-6)
- Set Text Color in Dialling Display (☞P.14-6)
- Set Background Color in Dialling Display (☞P.14-7)
- Set Operator Name (☞P.14-7)

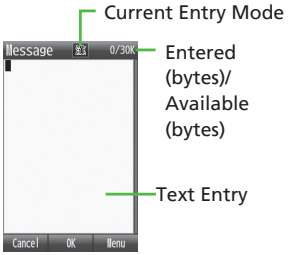
Text Entry

Enter Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana (single-/double-byte), alphanumerics (single-/double-byte), symbols (single-/double-byte), pictograms, emoticons or Hangul.

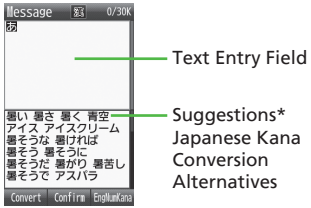
Icon	Entry Mode	Icon	Entry Mode
あ	Kanji or Hiragana (➔P.2-8)	#@	Symbols (single-byte) (➔P.2-9)
カ	Katakana (double-byte) (➔P.2-9)	絵	Pict. (Common) (➔P.2-9)
ｶﾅ	Katakana (single-byte) (➔P.2-9)	絵	Pict. (All) (➔P.2-9)
A	Alphanumerics (double-byte) (➔P.2-9)	顔	Emoticons (➔P.2-9)
Ab	Alphanumerics (single-byte) (➔P.2-9)	한	Hangul (➔P.2-11)
1	Number (double-byte) (➔P.2-9)	a	Alphanumerics (double-byte, lower case) (➔P.2-9)
12	Number (single-byte) (➔P.2-9)	ab	Alphanumerics (single-byte, lower case) (➔P.2-9)
※	Symbols (double-byte) (➔P.2-9)		

See "Changing Entry Mode" (➔P.2-8) about toggling Entry mode.

Text Entry Window



Suggestions



*Suggestions do not appear in Katakana, Alphanumeric (double-byte), or Number entry mode. If ***Prediction*** is set to ***Off*** in Kanji/Kana entry mode, press ✉ (Convert) / ☆ (EngNumKana) to convert text.

- Suggestions differ by season or time of day.
- Only numbers can be entered in Date & Time or Alarm time. Text entry window does not appear. Enter numbers directly in Text entry field.
- When Voice Call or Video Call arrives while entering text, simply answer the call. When the call ends, text entry window returns. When Alarm is activated, end Alarm to return to text entry window.

Changing Entry Mode

Toggle text entry mode: Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana (single-/double-byte), Alphanumerics (single-/double-byte), Symbols (single-/double-byte), Pictograms, Emoticons or Hangul.

1 In text entry window,

2 Select entry mode

- In text entry window, press to toggle to Pict. (Common). Press / to toggle Pict. (Common)/Pict. (All)/Symbol (Full)/Emoticon.

Kana/Kanji

Use predictive entry to convert and enter characters. Alternatively, directly convert entered Hiragana. Katakana or pictograms may appear in Suggestions.

Example: Enter *鈴木*

1 In text entry window,

2 *漢かな*

3 3 **(three times)**

- *す* is entered.

4

- To enter same character continuously, to move cursor to the right.

5 3 **(three times)** → *

- *ず* is entered.

6 2 **(twice)**

- *き* is entered.

7 Highlight *鈴木* → **(OK)**

- After entering hiragana, press * to add ゛ or ゜.
- After entering hiragana, press * to toggle case.
- Press CLEAR to cancel a misentry.
- If you over-toggle character, press to toggle in reverse.
- To set as Hiragana, press (Confirm).
- If no suggestions appear, press (Convert) → to change conversion range → Highlight conversion alternatives → (Select) → Repeat steps for other characters.
- If conversion fails, try another reading. For multiple Kanji words, try converting characters separately.
- While suggestions appear, press (Convert) for conversion alternatives. While conversion alternatives appear, press (Predict) to return to Suggestions.

Katakana/Alphabet/Number

Use the suggested characters shown in text entry window to input text, when entering single-byte characters.

1 In text entry window, → *カナ / ｶﾅ /Ab/Ab/12/12*

2 Enter katakana/alphabet/number

- After entering katakana, press to add ゛ or ゜.
- After entering katakana, press to toggle case.
- In Alphabet entry mode (A , Ab , a , ab), enter a character then press to toggle case.
- Press CLEAR to cancel a mistaken entry.
- If you over-toggle character, press to toggle in reverse.
- To enter same character continuously, press to move cursor to the right.
- In Kanji/Kana entry mode, enter characters and press (EngNumKana) to toggle Katakana/Alphanumerics/Numbers entry mode.
  Example: Enter *くも* and press (EngNumKana), *クモ* , *C*, or *22277777* appears in Suggestions.

Symbol

For available symbols, see "Symbols" (➔P.15-14).

1 In text entry window, → *! @# /!@#*

- Press → / to toggle text entry mode.
- Press (Prev.page) / (Next page) until symbol appears.

2 Select character

- Enter symbols continuously. To cancel Symbols entry, press CLEAR.

- Once entered symbols remain as history and appear in ***All History***.
- In Kanji/Kana entry mode, enter characters and press (Convert) to convert to symbols.
  Example: Enter *てん* and press (Convert), . or … appear in Suggestions.

Pictograms/Emoticons

Combine symbols to enter emoticons as well as pictograms (➔P.15-15).

1 In text entry window, → ***Pictogram/Emoticon***

- Press → / to toggle text entry mode.
- Press (Prev.page) / (Next page) until the pictogram or emoticon appears.

2 Select pictogram/emoticon

- You can continuously enter pictograms and emoticons. To stop entering pictograms or emoticons, press CLEAR.

- Selecting Pict. (Common) is available only in Message window/Subject window. Select to send message to non-SoftBank devices.
- Once entered pictograms remain as history and appear in ***All History***.
- In Kanji/Kana entry mode, enter *はーと* , *でんわ* and convert to pictograms. Similarly, *わーい* or *えーん* can be converted to emoticons.

Line Break

To enter line break in ***Hangul*** entry mode, place cursor at the end of the text.

1 In text entry window, [#] (five times) → [■] (OK)

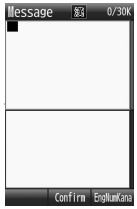
- In ***Symbol (Full)***/***Symbol (Half)*** entry mode, highlight line break → [■] (Select).
- Place cursor at the end of the text → Press [▯] / [▯] to insert line breaks.

- Line breaks cannot be inserted in some entry windows (e.g., Subject window in Messaging).

Entering Space

Entering space varies by Entry mode.

漢かな / カナ / ｶﾅ



1 [0] (five times)

- In *漢かな* entry mode, press [■] (Confirm) to enter space.

A b /Ab

1 [0] (twice)

Symbol (Full)/Symbol (Half)

1 [✥] and highlight [ ] → [■] (Select)

Hangul

1 [0] (three times)

- When Entry mode is *1 2*/*12*/***Pictogram***/***Emoticon***, toggle the above Entry mode and enter.
- When cursor is at the end of a sentence, entering space with [▯] is also available.
- Space cannot be inserted in some entry windows (e.g., Recipient window in Messaging).

Hangul

1 In text entry window, [Menu] → *Hangul*

- If confirmation appears, select ***OK***.

2 Enter characters

- Press number keys to enter assigned character units that appear; combine several consonants and vowels.

Consonant Example (Key Assignment)	
ㄱ	4 (once)
ㅋ	4 (twice)
ㄲ	4 (three times)
Vowel Example (Key Assignment)	
아	0 1
야	0 1 2
어	0 2 1
여	0 2 2 1
오	0 2 3
요	0 2 2 3
왜	0 2 3 1 2 1

Using Quick Address List

Save mail addresses/URLs for easy entry.

1 In Mail address or URL entry window or field, [Menu] → *Insert* → *Quick address list*

2 Select mail address/URL

Deleting/Editing

1 Move cursor to character, and [CLEAR]

- When a space is highlighted, the character before the cursor is deleted.
- To delete all characters after cursor, press [CLEAR] for 1 + seconds. If there are no characters after cursor, all characters are deleted.
- Press [Back] for text entry window exit confirmation.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (☞P.2-16)

- Inserting Saved Information
- Jumping Cursor to Top/End
- Changing Text Entry Setting

Settings

- Set Text Size in Editor (☞P.14-6)

User's Dictionary (Japanese)

Save frequently used words/phrases of up to 40 characters; entries appear in Suggestions when Reading is entered.

Editing User's Dictionary

1. ■ → *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *User's dictionary* → *Japanese dictionary*/*English dictionary* → *New entry*
2. Select Word field → Enter word or sentence → ■ (OK)
3. Select Reading field → Enter reading → ■ (OK)

4. ✉ (Save)

Saving to User's Dictionary

1. In text entry window, Y! → *Add to dictionary*
2. Highlight the first character → ■ (Start)
3. Highlight the last character → ■ (End)

4. *Japanese dictionary*/*English dictionary*
5. Select Reading field → Enter reading → ■ (OK)
6. ■ (Save)

• If selecting the range which includes a line break, character strings before the line break are saved.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (☞P.2-17)
- Deleting Entries from User's Dictionary

Settings
- Save Entries to User's Dictionary (☞P.14-3)
- Edit User's Dictionary Entries (☞P.14-3)
- Delete User's Dictionary Entries (☞P.14-3)

Phone Book

Create up to 1000 entries. Number of savable items per entry varies by USIM Card. Insert USIM Card into compatible SoftBank handsets to access USIM Card entries.
For savable data for a Phone Book entry, see "Phone Book" (➲P.15-17).

Note

- **Protect Important Information**
  Phone Book entries may be lost/altered if battery is removed or left uncharged for an extended period; accidents/malfunctions may also affect entries. Back up entries and store separately. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for damages from lost information.

- If different USIM Card with saved entries is inserted, copy saved USIM entries to handset, confirmation appears when handset is first powered on. Choose ***Yes*** to copy entries.

Phone Book Window

Phone Book entries (➲P.2-13) are divided into three tabs. Select tabs to view desired information.

Each Phone Book tab contains items listed below:

Tab	Item	
	Phone number	
	E-mail address	
	Photo	Homepage
	Group	Company
	Birthday	Job title
	Blood type	Memo
	Address	
	Secret mode	Vibe : Voice call
	Tone : Voice call	Vibe : Video call
	Tone : Video call	Vibe : Message
	Tone : Message	

Creating New Entries

Save new Phone Book entries to Phone or USIM Card. Default: ***Phone***.
Set save location to USIM Card as required (➲P.14-12).
Create new entry or save from Call Log record.

Saving Information as a New Entry

Create new entry; save name, reading, phone number, and mail address.

- For other items, see "Adding Information to Phone Book Entry" (➲P.2-17).

1 → (New entry)

- If Save setting (➲P.14-12) is set to ***Always ask***, save location prompt appears. Select ***Phone***/***USIM***.

New Entry Items

2 Select Last name field → Enter last name

3 Select First name field → Enter first name

4 Select Reading : Last name field → Edit reading as required

5 Select Reading : First name field → Edit reading as required

6 Select Phone number field → Enter number → Select phone type

7 Select E-mail address field → Enter mail address → Select address type

8 (Save)

- 0 through 9, #, *, -, P (pause), and + (International Code) can be registered for entering in the Phone number field. Press (*) to toggle *, - and P. Press (0) (1 + seconds) to enter +.
- If a Memory Card file is selected for incoming image or Ringtone, copy file to handset confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move file to handset first confirmation appears. Choose ***Yes*** to complete setting.
- When using Samsung New PC Studio to synchronize Phone Book entries with a PC, secret entries are not synchronized to PC. If an entry is changed to a secret entry, it can no longer be synchronized and is deleted from the PC. Samsung New PC Studio is available for download from SAMSUNG Website (http://jp.samsungmobile.com/pc/lineup/840download.html).

Saving Entries from Call Log Records

Save numbers in Call Log records to new or existing entries.

1 / /

2 Highlight/select record →

3 *Add to Phonebook*

4 Select saving method

■ **To Save as a New Entry**
New → (➔P.2-13 Creating New Entries 2)

■ **To Update Existing Entry**
Update → Search and select entry (➔P.2-14) → Save a number to Phone Book (➔P.2-13)

- If save setting (➔P.14-12) is set to ***Always ask***, a message appears to prompt you to specify a saving location. Select ***Phone/USIM***.

Entry Search

Use ***ABC/Group/Reading*** to search entries.

1

Phone Book List

2 → *Settings* → *Search method*

3 *ABC/Group/Reading*

- Selected search method is saved.

4 Search entry

■ **To Search Alphabetically**
to select letter → to select entry

■ **To Search by Group**
Select a group → View entry from search result

■ **To Search by Reading**
View entry from search result

Entry Details

- Search by entering a lead-off letter.
- If ***Security*** → ***Secret mode*** is set to ***Hide***, secret entries do not appear. In Phone Book search window, press → ***Unlock temporarily*** → Enter Phone Password → (OK) to see secret entries.

Calling from Phone Book

1 Search and select entry (P.2-14) → (Select)

2 Highlight phone number → ( )

3 Place a call

■ **To Place a Voice Call**
Voice call

■ **To Place a Video Call**
Video call

■ **To Place a Call before Editing Number**
Copy to dial → Edit phone number → ( ) / → ***Video call*** / → ***International call*** (P.3-12 International Calling)

■ **To Place an International Call**
international call (P.3-12 International Calling)

Deleting Phone Book Entries

Deleting an Entry

1 → Highlight entry → → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

- Alternatively, in Entry details window, press → ***Delete*** → ***Yes***.

Deleting Multiple Entries

1 → → *Delete*

2 Delete entries

■ **To Delete Multiple Entries**
Multiple → Check entries → (Delete) → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete All Entries**
All → Enter Phone Password → (OK) → ***Yes***

Advanced

Advanced Settings (☞P.2-17)

- Adding Information to Phone Book Entry
- Sending Phone Book Entry
- Copying Entries between Phone & USIM
- Temporarily Canceling Phone Book Secret Mode
- Viewing USIM Card Service Number
- Editing Phone Book Entry
- Copying Item
- Saving Face Link to Phone Book Entry
- Adding Phone Book Entry to Favorites
- Saving Phone Book Entry
- Entering & Saving Phone Number

Settings

- Activate/Cancel Simple Search (☞P.14-3)
- Set Text Size in Phone Book (☞P.14-6)
- Select Phone Book Save Location (☞P.14-12)
- Change Phone Book Preference (Phone/USIM) (☞P.14-12)
- Change Search Method (☞P.14-12)
- Set Font Size (☞P.14-12)
- Copy All Phone Book Entries & Save on Handset & USIM Card (☞P.14-12)

Advanced Settings

Standby

Editing Slide Show

■ → ***Settings*** → ***Display settings*** → ***Wallpaper*** → ***Slide show***

■ To Replace Image

Y! → ***Replace*** → Select image

- With Memory Card inserted, select file in ***Digital camera***.

■ To Change Image Order

Highlight image → Y! → ***Change order*** → ⊠ to move image to desired position → ■ (Save)

■ To Delete Image

Highlight image → Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Yes***

Text Entry

Entering Date/Time

In text entry window, select Kanji/Kana entry mode → Enter Hiragana with Keypad → Y! (EngNumKana) → Highlight entry in Suggestions → ■ (Select)

Toggling between Suggested Symbols/Pictograms/Emoticons

In text entry window, while Suggestions appear, press ✉ / Y!

Specifying Range to Copy/Cut

In text entry window, Y! → ***Edit*** → ***Copy*** or ***Cut*** → Highlight the first character of the range to cut/copy → ■ (Start) → Highlight the last character to specify the range → ■ (End)

- To copy or cut all text in text entry window, press Y! (All).
- Copied or cut text remains even after powering off.

Pasting Copied/Cut Text

In text entry window, move cursor to the position to paste → Y! → ***Edit*** → ***Paste***

Undoing Text Entry

In text entry window, Y! → ***Edit*** → ***Undo***

- In Kanji/Kana entry mode and Alphabet(single-bytes) entry mode, undo operations immediately after performing text entry or conversion. In other entry modes, undoing ***Cut***, ***Paste***, or ***Delete*** is available.

Inserting Saved Information

In text entry window, Y! → ***Insert***

■ To Insert Text on Notepad

Notepad → Select item

■ To Insert Barcode

Bar code reader → Scan barcode (➔P.10-8)

■ To Insert Information in Phone Book

Phonebook → Search and select entry (➔P.2-14) → Select item

■ To Insert Account Details

Account details → Select item

■ **To Insert Signature**
Signature

■ **To Insert a Part of Mail Address**
Quick address list (➲P.2-11)

- For some text entry windows, inserting items above may not be available.

Jumping Cursor to Top/End

In text entry window, [Y!] → ***Cursor position*** → Select item

Changing Text Entry Setting

In text entry window, [Y!] → ***Settings***

■ **To Activate/Cancel Prediction**
Prediction → ***On*** or ***Off***

■ **To Activate/Cancel Learning Function**
Learning → ***On*** or ***Off***

■ **To Activate/Cancel Auto Capitalization**
Auto capitalization → ***On*** or ***Off***

■ **To Activate/Cancel Flexible Search**
Flexible search → ***On*** or ***Off***

■ **To Reset Learning Function**
Reset learning → Enter Phone Password → [●] (OK) → ***Yes***

■ **To Clear History for Pictograms/Emoticons**
Clear history → ***Yes***

■ **To Change Font Size**
Font size → ***Large/Standard/Small***

■ **To Change Cursor Speed**
Auto cursor → ***Off/Slow/Normal/Fast/Very fast***

User's Dictionary

Deleting Entries from User's Dictionary

[●] → ***Settings*** → ***Phone settings*** → ***User's dictionary*** → ***Japanese dictionary/English dictionary***

■ **To Delete an Entry**
Highlight item → [Y!] → ***Delete*** → ***Selected*** → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete Multiple Entries**
[Y!] → ***Delete*** → ***Multiple*** → Check items → [✉] (Delete) → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete All Entries**
[Y!] → ***Delete*** → ***All*** → Enter Phone Password → [●] (OK) → ***Yes***

Phone Book

Adding Information to Phone Book Entry

[📖] → [✉] (New entry)
Or
[📖] → Search entry (➲P.2-14) → [✉] (Edit)

■ **To Save Group**
[👤] → Select Group field → Select item → [✉] (Save)

■ **To Save Birthday**
[👤] → Select Birthday field → Enter birthday → [●] (OK) → [✉] (Save)

■ **To Save Blood Type**
[👤] → Select Blood type field → Select item → [✉] (Save)

■ **To Save Address**
[👤] → Select Address field → Select Type field → Private/Business/Others → Select Zip code field → Enter zip code → Select Country field → Enter country name → Select Province field → Enter province name → Select City field → Enter city name → Select Street field → Enter street name → Select Additional information field → Enter additional information → [✉] (Done) → [✉] (Save)

■ **To Save URL**
[👤] → Select Homepage field → Enter URL → Select type → [✉] (Save)

■ **To Save Company**
[👤] → Select Company field → Enter company → [✉] (Save)

■ **To Save Job Title**

→ Select Job title field → Enter job title → (Save)

■ **To Save Memo**

→ Select Memo field → Enter text → (Save)

■ **To Set Secret Mode**

→ Select Secret mode field ***On*** or ***Off*** → (Save)

- Items other than Group are unavailable in USIM Card Phone Book.

Setting Incoming Image to Phone Book Entry

→ (New entry) → → Select Photo field

Or

→ Search entry (➔P.2-14) → (Edit) → → Select Photo field

■ **To Set from Saved Still Image**

Pictures → Select file → (Save)

- With Memory Card inserted, select a file from Pictures or Digital Camera folder.

■ **To Set Character**

Character icon → Select item → (Save)

■ **To Set by Capturing Still Image**

Take photo → Capture still image → (Save)

■ **To Cancel Set Incoming Image**

Off → (Save)

- If a Memory Card file is set as incoming image, copy file to handset first confirmation appears. If file is copy protected, move file to handset first confirmation appears. Choose ***Yes*** to complete setting.

Setting Ringtone to Phone Book Entry

→ (New entry) → → Select Ringtone settings field

Or

→ Search entry (➔P.2-14) → (Edit) → → Select Ringtone settings field

■ **To Set Ringtone for Voice Call/Video Call**

Tone: Voice call or ***Tone: Video call*** → Select file location → Select file → (Save)

■ **To Set Ringtone for Message**

Tone: Message → ***Ringtone*** → Select a file location → Select a file → ***Duration*** → Enter duration → (OK) → (Done)

- To reset setting, select file → (Reset).

- While selecting a file, press (Play) to playback.
- If a Memory Card file is set as Ringtone, copy file to handset first confirmation appears. If file is copy protected, move file to handset first confirmation appears. Choose ***Yes*** to complete setting.

Setting Vibration to Phone Book Entry

→ (New entry) → → Select Vibration settings field

Or

→ Search entry (➔P.2-14) → (Edit) → → Select Vibration settings field

→ Select Vibration pattern → (Save)

- While selecting a Vibration pattern, press (Play) to check the pattern.

Creating Message from Phone Book Entry

→ Search and select entry (➔P.2-14)

■ **To Create Message from Phone Book**

Highlight phone number → ( ) → ***S! Mail*** or ***SMS*** → (➔P.4-4 S! Mail 5, P.4-5 SMS 5)

■ **To Create Message from Mail Address**

Highlight mail address → ( ) → (➔P.4-4 S! Mail 5)

Opening Website from Phone Book Entry

→ Search and select entry with homepage saved (➔P.2-14) → → Highlight homepage → (Access) → ***Yes***

Sending Phone Book Entry

→ → ***Send***

- In Entry details window, press → ***Send***.

■ **To Send via Message**

Via message → Check entries → (Send) → (➔P.4-4 S! Mail 2)

■ **To Send via Infrared**

Via infrared → Check entries → (Send) → (➔P.13-3)

Copying Entries between Phone & USIM

■ **To Copy an Entry**

→ Highlight entry → → ***Copy to USIM*** or ***Copy to phone*** → ***Selected*** → ***Yes***

- In Entry details window, press → ***Copy to USIM*** or ***Copy to phone*** → ***Yes***.

■ **To Copy Multiple Entries**

▣ → Ⓨ! → ***Copy to USIM*/*Copy to phone*** → ***Multiple*** → Check entries → ✉ (Copy) → ***Yes***

■ **To Copy All Entries from Phone to USIM/USIM to Phone**

▣ → Ⓨ! → ***Copy to USIM*/*Copy to phone*** → ***All*** → ***Yes***

Temporarily Canceling Phone Book Secret Mode

▣ → Ⓨ! → ***Unlock temporarily*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK)

- If ***Security*** → ***Secret mode*** is set to ***Hide***, numbers set as ***Secret mode On*** appear temporarily in Phone Book.

Viewing USIM Card Service Number

▣ → Ⓨ! → ***Service number***

- The item ***Service number*** may not appear for some USIM Cards.

Specifying Saving Destination for Phone Book Entries

▣ → Ⓨ! → ***Settings*** → ***Save to*** → ***Phone*/*USIM*/*Always Ask***

Toggling Phone Book View between USIM & Phone

▣ → Ⓨ! → ***Settings*** → ***Change view*** → ***Phone*/*USIM*/*Phone & USIM***

- Change remains even if handset is powered off.

Editing Phone Book Entry

▣ → Search and select entry (➲P.2-14) → ✉ (Edit) → (➲P.2-13 Creating New Entries ❷)

- To edit secret Phone Book entry, set ***Secret mode*** to ***Show***.

  Or

  Press Ⓨ! → ***Unlock temporarily*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK).

Copying Item

▣ → Search and select entry (➲P.2-14) → Highlight item → Ⓨ! → ***Copy item***

Saving Face Link to Phone Book Entry

▣ → Search and select entry (➲P.2-14) → Ⓨ! → ***Face link***

■ **To Save Face Link from a Saved Still Image**

Face registration → Select from ***Image 1*** to ***Image 5*** → ***Pictures*** → Select file → ■ (Register)

■ **To Save Face Link by Capturing a Still Image**

Face registration → Select from ***Image 1*** to ***Image 5*** → ***Take photo*** → Capture still image

■ **To Remove Face Link**

This person's photo

- To Remove a Face Link

  Highlight Face Link → Ⓨ! → ***Release*** → ***Selected*** → ***Yes***
- To Remove Multiple Face Links

  Ⓨ! → ***Release*** → ***Multiple*** → Check Face Link → ✉ (Remove) → ***Yes***
- To Remove All Face Links

  Ⓨ! → ***Release*** → ***All*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → ***Yes***

Adding Phone Book Entry to Favorites

▣ → Search and select entry (➲P.2-14) → Ⓨ! → ***Add to Favorites*** → Select number/***No setting*** → Select address/***No setting*** → ✉ (Save)

- Alternatively, press ▣ → ■ (Add) → Select entry to add.
- Add entry to Favorites and in Standby, press Softkey to call or message.

Saving Phone Book Entry

▣ → Search and select entry (➲P.2-14) → Ⓨ! → ***Save to Data Folder*** → ***Phone*/*Memory card*** → ***Yes***

- To save a file to ***Memory card***, insert Memory Card.

Entering & Saving Phone Number

Enter phone number → Ⓨ! → ***Add to Phonebook***

■ **To Save New Entry**

New → (➲P.2-13 Creating New Entries ❷)

■ **To Update Entry**

Update → Search and select entry (➲P.2-14) → Enter each item (➲P.2-13)

- Only name, reading, mail address, and group can be saved to USIM Card.

Adding Groups

■ → ***Phone*** → ***Group setting*** → ✉ (Add)

■ To Set Group Names

Select Group name field → Enter group name → ✉ (Save)

■ To Set Group Icon

Select Group icon field → Select icon → ✉ (Save)

■ To Set Incoming Image

Select Group photo field → ***Pictures***/***Character icon***/***Take photo***/***Off*** → Set incoming image → ✉ (Save)

- If ***Pictures*** is selected, select file.
- If ***Character icon*** is selected, select icon.
- If ***Take photo*** is selected, capture a still image.
- If ***Off*** is selected, incoming image will not be set.

■ To Set Ringtone

- To Set Ringtone for Voice Call or Video Call ***Tone: Voice call***/***Tone: Video call*** → Select a file location → Select a file → ✉ (Save)
- To Set Ringtone for Message ***Tone: Message*** → ***Ringtone*** → Select a file location → Select a file → ***Duration*** → Enter duration → ■ (OK) → ✉ (Done) → ✉ (Save)

■ To Set Vibration

Select Vibe field → Select Vibration pattern → ✉ (Save)

- For USIM Card, only group name and group icon can be set.
- Images and Ringtones set for individual entries take priority over Group setting.

Changing Group Settings

■ → ***Phone*** → ***Group setting*** → Highlight group → ■ (Edit) → Edit each item the same way as items are added (➔P.2-20).

Calling

3

Voice Call **3-2**
- Placing a Voice Call 3-2
- Receiving a Voice Call 3-2
- In-Call Operations 3-3

Video Call **3-4**
- Placing a Video Call 3-5
- Receiving a Video Call 3-5

Favorites **3-6**
- Saving Entries as Favorites 3-6
- Using Favorites 3-6
- Sending messages 3-6

Emergency Numbers **3-7**

Answering Machine **3-7**
- Activating & Canceling 3-7
- Using Answering Machine 3-8
- Deleting Messages 3-8

Black List **3-8**
- Rejecting Incoming Call 3-8
- Calls from Specified Numbers 3-9
- Calls from Unknown ID Numbers 3-9
- Calls from Withheld ID Numbers 3-9
- Calls from Public Pay Phones 3-9
- Calls from Unavailable ID Numbers 3-9

Call Log Records **3-9**
- Viewing Call Log Records 3-9
- Viewing Ranking 3-10
- Calling Call Log Records 3-10
- Deleting Call Log Records 3-11
- Resetting Ranking 3-11

Checking Call Time/Cost **3-11**

International Calling **3-12**

Global Roaming **3-12**
- Setting Network 3-12
- Calling Outside Japan 3-13

Optional Services **3-14**
- Voicemail 3-14
- Call Forwarding 3-16
- Call Waiting 3-16
- Conference Call 3-17
- Call Barring 3-18
- Caller ID 3-19

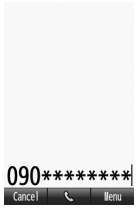
Advanced Settings **3-19**
- Voice Call 3-19
- Video Call 3-20
- Call Log Records/Ranking 3-21
- Conference Call 3-22

Voice Call

Placing a Voice Call

Directly enter phone number to call.
To place a call from Phone Book, see "Calling from Phone Book" (➔P.2-15).

1 Enter phone number including area code



Phone Number Entry Window

2 Confirm entered phone number → [Call] / [■] ([Call])

3 To end the call → [Power]

- To correct entered digit, press [CLEAR]. Press [CLEAR] for 1 + seconds to delete all.
- To enter P (pause), press [*] twice. To enter + (International Code), press [0] for 1 + seconds.
- When the line is busy, press [Power] to end the call and try again later. If ***Auto redial*** (➔P.14-11) is ***On***, number is automatically redialed. Press [X] (cancel) / [Power] to cancel redialing.
- When Stereo Earphone Microphone (optional) is connected and ***Earphone call*** is set to ***On*** in Standby, press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1+ seconds to call specified phone number. Press it again for 1 + seconds to end the call.
- To input numbers for automatic voice service guidance, enter using Keypad.

Receiving a Voice Call

1 Voice Call window appears, [Call]

2 To end the call → [Power]

- To put caller on hold, press [Power]. To connect the call, press [Call].
- To adjust ringer volume, press [▲] / [▼].
- If Stereo Earphone Microphone (optional) is connected, press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1 + seconds to accept Voice Calls. Press it again for 1 + seconds to end the call.
- Missed Call Window
  Missed call window appears for unanswered calls. Select View to view incoming calls (➔P.3-9).
- Ringtone
  Specify Ringtones by Phone Book entry or Category (➔P.2-18, P.2-20). If they are not set, they will ring according to the activated mode (➔P.1-12).
  If ***Security*** → ***Secret mode*** is set to ***Hide*** when a call from a secret entry is received, the handset will ring according to the activated mode.

- Incoming Call Window
  If a caller sends Caller ID, phone number appears. If saved in Phone Book, name also appears. If caller hides Caller ID, ***Withheld*** appears.
  If incoming image has been saved in Phone Book or for the group, the image also appears (➔P.2-18, P.2-20).
  If ***Security → Secret mode*** is set to ***Hide*** when a call from a secret entry is received, only number appears.
- When you cannot answer a call
  Use Call Forwarding or Voicemail to handle calls. While handset rings/vibrates, press ✉ (Forward) to forward the call to Voicemail or designated number immediately (➔P.3-15, P.3-16). Alternatively, press ■ (Record) to record caller message on handset (➔P.3-7).

In-Call Operations

Adjusting Volume

1 During a call

2 🔈 / 🔉

- Adjust Earpiece or Earphone (optional) volume. Setting remains even after powered off.

Holding Incoming Call

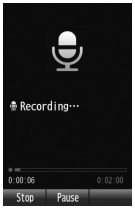
Place call on hold and reconnect.

1 ■ (Hold) during call

- When a call is put on hold, the party on hold hears a hold tone and neither party can hear the other's voice.
- To reconnect call, press ■ (Answer).
- To put a current call on hold, separate subscription is required to use either Call Waiting (➔P.3-16) or Conference Call (➔P.3-17). No liability is assumed for any damage associated with SSL/TLS use.

Recording a Call

1 During a call, Y! → *Record* → ■ (Record)



2 End recording → ✉ (Stop)

- Record voice for up to two minutes during a call.
- To pause recording, press ■ (Pause). Press ■ (Record) to resume recording; press ✉ (Save) to save recording up to paused point.
- Recorded sound file is saved to Ring songs・tones in Data Folder.
- If Call Waiting is subscribed to, recording is stopped when there is another incoming call, and Incoming call window appears.
- If the call is terminated while being recorded, recording is automatically shut off, and the voice file is saved.

Text Memo

1. **During a call, Y! → *Memo***
2. **(Add) → Enter text memo → Select Category field → Select category → (Save)**

- To edit text memo, after 1, select memo → Select Add memo field → Enter text memo → Select category → (Save).

Advanced

Advanced Settings (☞P.3-19)

- Saving Entered Phone Number to Phone Book
- Sending New Message to Entered Number
- Showing/Hiding Your Number for a Call
- Setting Mute
- Talking in Low Voice

Settings

- Set Side Keys to Activate Reject Call/Mute Ringer (☞P.14-3)
- Set Any Key Answer (☞P.14-3)
- Answer Incoming Call by Opening Handset (☞P.14-3)
- Accept/Reject Calls from Specified Phone Numbers (☞P.14-10)
- Create/Edit Black List (☞P.14-10)
- Accept/Reject Calls from Unknown Numbers (☞P.14-10)
- Accept/Reject Calls When Number is Withheld (☞P.14-10)
- Accept/Reject Calls from Payphones (☞P.14-10)
- Accept/Reject Calls When Number is Unavailable (☞P.14-10)
- Show/Hide Your Own Number (☞P.14-11)
- Set Handset to Automatically Redial Busy Numbers (☞P.14-11)
- Activate/Cancel Automatic Ringer Reduction (☞P.14-11)
- Enable/Disable Calling via Stereo Earphone Microphone (☞P.14-11)
- Adjust Earpiece Volume (☞P.14-11)

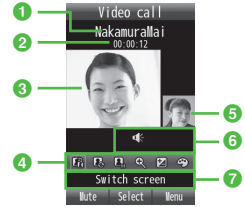
Video Call

Exchange voice/video with compatible 3G handsets.

- You may experience a problem with sound quality when using Speakerphone (➔P.3-21) at a raised volume. Lower volume or using Stereo Earphone Microphone (optional) is recommended.
- Ambient noise may hamper voice quality. Use Stereo Earphone Microphone (optional).
- Using Speakerphone in public may disturb others; please mind your mobile manners.

Note

- **Video Calls to incompatible handsets may be disconnected; fees apply.**



1. The other party's name (if number is not saved to Phone Book, number appears.)
2. Call duration
3. Large Image (normally, incoming image) Select to switch to small Image.

4 Video Call menu icons
:Switch screen
: My image
/ : Stop or resume sending My image
: Zoom
: Brightness
: Effects

5 Small Image (normally, outgoing image)
Select to switch to Large Image.

6 Status icon
:Mute my voice
/ :Speaker Off/On

7 Menu Title
Selected menu title appears.

Placing a Video Call

Enter phone number directly. To use Phone Book, see "Calling from Phone Book" (P.2-15).

1 Enter a number including area code

2 → *Video call*

3 To end the call →

- If Video Call does not connect
  At prompt, select ***Retry* → *Voice call*** or ***Create message*; *Add to phonebook*** to save number.
  Select ***Video call*** to dial the same number again.

Receiving a Video Call

1 Video Call window appears,
- Send My Image confirmation appears. Choose ***Yes*** or ***No***.

2 To end the call →

- To put an incoming Video Call on hold without answering it, press (Hold) / . To release the hold and answer the Video Call, press (Answer) / while holding it.
- Press / to adjust ringer volume while handset rings.
- If Stereo Earphone Microphone (optional) is connected, press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1 + seconds to answer Video Call. Press it again to end call.
- To disconnect an incoming Video Call without answering it, press (Forward) / (Reject).
- After pressing in 1, My Image appears, but is not sent. Confirmation appears, choose ***Yes*** to send My Image, or ***No*** to send Alternative picture. When Video Call connects, My Image or Alternative picture appears in Small Image.
- To adjust volume, press / .

Advanced

Advanced Settings P.3-20
- Showing/Hiding Caller ID
- Setting Mute
- Switching to Speakerphone
- Putting a Video Call on Hold

Settings
- Set Preset Picture as Outgoing Image (P.14-9)
- Set Alternative Picture as Outgoing Image (P.14-9)
- Adjust Incoming Video Quality (P.14-9)
- Adjust Outgoing Video Quality (P.14-9)
- Set Preset Picture to Appear When Video Call is on Hold (P.14-9)
- Set Hold Setting (P.14-9)
- Set Preset Picture to Appear When Video Call is on Hold without Answering (P.14-9)
- Set Hold Answer Setting (P.14-9)
- Activate/Cancel Mute for Video Call (P.14-9)
- Activate/Cancel Speakerphone during Video Call (P.14-9)
- Set Backlight (P.14-9)
- Set Handset Response When Video Call Cannot be Connected (P.14-9)
- Answer Video Call from Specified Party Automatically (P.14-9)
- Create Auto Answer List (P.14-10)
- Show/Hide Your Own Image for Video Calls (P.14-10)
- Accept/Reject Calls from Specified Phone Numbers (P.14-10)
- Create/Edit Black List (P.14-10)
- Accept/Reject Calls from Unknown Numbers (P.14-10)

- Accept/Reject Calls When Number is Withheld (☞P.14-10)
- Accept/Reject Calls from Payphones (☞P.14-10)
- Accept/Reject Calls When Number is Unavailable (☞P.14-10)
- Show/Hide Your Own Number (☞P.14-11)
- Set Handset to Automatically Redial Busy Numbers (☞P.14-11)
- Activate/Cancel Automatic Ringer Reduction (☞P.14-11)
- Enable/Disable Calling via Stereo Earphone Microphone (☞P.14-11)
- Adjust Earpiece Volume (☞P.14-11)

Favorites

Save Phone Book entries as Favorites for quick calling.

Saving Entries as Favorites

Save up to 20 frequently used entries.

1. ■ → *Phone* → *Favorites*
2. ■ (Add)
   - If more than one entry is saved in favorites, press [Y!] → *Add*.
3. Search and select Phone Book entry (➲P.2-14)
4. Select number/*No setting* → Select address/*No setting* → ✉ (Save)

- To remove saved phone number and mail address, press ■ → *Phone* → *Favorites* → Highlight entries → [Y!] → *Remove* → *Selected*.
- Secret entry phone numbers cannot be saved as Favorites.
- Setting phone number saved as Favorites to secret entry cancels Favorites setting automatically.

Using Favorites

1. ■ → *Phone* → *Favorites*
2. Highlight designated number → ■ ( )

- Alternatively, press [C] to view Favorites.

Sending messages

1. ■ → *Phone* → *Favorites*
2. Highlight designated number → ✉ ( )

- Alternatively, press [C] to view Favorites.

Emergency Numbers

Call 110 (Police), 119 (Fire & Ambulance) or 118 (Maritime Safety Agency). These numbers can be dialed even when certain Call Barring settings are active. See details below.

840SC Status	Emergency Numbers
Offline Mode activated (➔P.1-11)	N/A
Call Cost Limit exceeded (➔P.14-8)	Applicable
Phone Lock activated (➔P.11-3)	N/A
Password Lock activated (➔P.11-4)	Applicable
Required PIN not entered (➔P.11-4)	N/A
USIM Card cannot be authenticated (➔P.11-4)	N/A
Outgoing Call Barring activated (➔P.3-18)	Applicable

Note

- **Emergency calls may not be possible outside Japan depending on available network, signal conditions or handset settings.**

Emergency Location Report

When calls are placed to Police or other emergency agencies from handset, handset location information is automatically sent to the corresponding agency. Handset transmits location based on base station positioning information.

- Location accuracy may vary by geography or signal conditions. Always verify your location with address or nearby landmark.
- Base station positioning accuracy ranges from several hundred meters to ten kilometers. This information may differ from actual location due to distance of the closest base station location.
- This function is only available if the agency receiving an emergency call has implemented the infrastructure for receiving location information.
- If you hide Caller ID by dialing 184 before calling an emergency number, your location information is not sent. However, authorities may access this information when necessary.
- No subscription/Communication charges required.

Answering Machine

Handset records up to three 15-second messages.

Activating & Canceling

1. ▣ → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Answering machine*
2. *On/Off* → *On* or *Off*

- If Answering machine is on, ⊙ appears in Standby.
- In Standby, press CLEAR for 1 + seconds to activate/cancel Answering Machine.
- Calls appear in Call Log records.

Note

- **If handset is off, out-of-range, or in Offline Mode, Answering Machine is unavailable. Use Voicemail to handle incoming calls.**
- **Answering Machine requires at least 600 KB of unused handset memory.**

Using Answering Machine

Use Answering Machine to record caller messages (➲P.3-7).

1 ■ → ***Phone*** → ***Play answering machine***

2 **Select a message**

- After Answering Machine records a message, ✉ appears in Standby.
- Alternatively, in Standby, press ☎ → Highlight Answering machine → ✉ ( ) → ■ (Play).
- Alternatively, press ■ → ***Settings*** → ***Call settings*** → ***Answering machine*** → ***Play answering machine*** → ■ (Play).

Deleting Messages

1 ■ → ***Phone*** → ***Play answering machine***

2 **Highlight message → ✉ (Delete) → *Yes***

- Message is deleted; ***Missed call*** appears in Call Log.

Advanced

Settings

- Activate/Cancel Answering Machine (☞P.14-8)
- Set Answering Machine Response Time (☞P.14-8)
- Play Answering Machine Records (☞P.14-8)
- Set Answering Machine Response Language (☞P.14-9)

Black List

Reject incoming calls. Alternatively, reject calls from specified or unknown numbers (➲P.14-10).

Rejecting Incoming Call

1 **While handset rings, ✉ (Reject)**

- Rejected calls appear in Call Log records.
- If Call Forwarding or Voicemail is unset, while handset rings, press ✉ (Forward) to reject the call.
  Call is unavailable due to the reasons of other party message appears on caller's handset before call is disconnected. If handset is incompatible, call is simply disconnected.

Calls from Specified Numbers

1 ■ → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Reject incoming calls*

2 *Set reject number* → *On/Off* → *On*

- For calls from Black list, caller hears a busy tone and call is not connected. Missed Call Notification appears in Standby. Select notification to check missed call.
- Choose *Off* to allow calls from specified numbers.

3 *Black list*

4 Y! → *Add* → Select an item → Add an entry (➲P.14-10)

- To delete saved numbers after 3, highlight numbers → Y! → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*.

Calls from Unknown ID Numbers

1 ■ → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Reject incoming calls*

2 *Unknown* → *On*

- Choose *Off* to allow calls from unknown numbers.

Calls from Withheld ID Numbers

1 ■ → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Reject incoming calls*

2 *Withheld* → *On*

- Choose *Off* to allow calls from withheld ID numbers.

Calls from Public Pay Phones

1 ■ → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Reject incoming calls*

2 *Payphone* → *On*

- Choose *Off* to allow calls from pay phones.

Calls from Unavailable ID Numbers

1 ■ → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Reject incoming calls*

2 *Unavailable* → *On*

- Choose *Off* to allow calls from unavailable ID numbers.

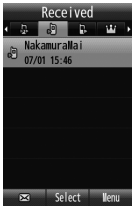
Call Log Records

Choose from / / / to view Call Log. Ranking for outgoing call appears in Ranking. Confirm call type, number, or time. Call Log holds a combined total of 1000 calls, 500 incoming calls, 500 outgoing calls and top ten rankings.

Viewing Call Log Records

1 ☎ → / / /

- Alternatively, press ☎ to show all call log records.
- Alternatively, press ◙ to show outgoing call log records.
- Alternatively, press ◙ to show incoming call log records.



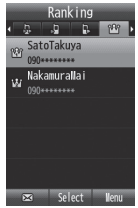
Call Log
(Incoming Calls)

2 Select record

- Call Log Record Icons
  - : Outgoing Voice Call
  - : Outgoing Video Call
  - : Incoming Voice Call
  - : Incoming Video Call
  - : Missed Voice Call
  - : Missed Video Call
  - : Rejected Voice Call
  - : Rejected Video Call
  - : Voicemail Notification
  - : Incoming Call Notification
  - : Answering Machine
- If ***Security*** → ***Secret mode*** is set to ***Hide***, names do not appear in Call Log for secret entries.
- Alternatively, in Standby, press ● → ***Phone*** → ***Call log*** → [ ] / [ ] / [ ] to confirm Call Log.

Viewing Ranking

1 ☎ → [ ]



Call Log (Ranking)

2 Select ranking

- If ***Security*** → ***Secret mode*** is set to ***Hide***, numbers set as ***Secret mode - On*** will not appear in Call Log.
- Alternatively, in Standby, press ● → ***Phone*** → ***Call log*** → [ ].

Calling Call Log Records

1 ☎ → [ ] / [ ] / [ ] / [ ] → **Highlight a log/ranking**

2 Place a call

■ **To Place a Voice Call**

● ([ ])

- Alternatively, highlight log → ✉ → ***Voice call*** to place a Voice Call.

■ **To Place a Video Call**

✉ → ***Video call***

- Alternatively, highlight log → ✉ → ***Video call*** to place a Video Call.

■ **To Place an International Call**

✉ → ***International call*** → Highlight country/Select ***Enter Code*** and Enter country code → ● ([ ])

- Highlight log → ✉ → ***International call*** → Highlight country → ● ([ ]).
  Or
  Highlight log → ✉ → ***International call*** → Enter country code → ● ([ ]) to place an International Call.

■ **To Call after Editing the Call Number**

✉ → ***Copy to dial*** → Edit number → ● ([ ]) / ✉ → ***Video call***/ ✉ → ***International call*** (➔P.3-13 Calling Outside Japan)

- Alternatively, highlight log → ✉ → ***Copy to dial*** → Edit number → ● ([ ]) / ✉ → ***Video call***/ ✉ → ***International call*** (➔P.3-13 Calling Outside Japan).

Deleting Call Log Records

1 → / /

2 **Delete records**

■ **To Delete a Record**
Highlight record → → ***Delete*** → ***Selected*** → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete Several Records**
→ ***Delete*** → ***Multiple*** → Check records → (Delete) → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete All Records**
→ ***Delete*** → ***All*** → Enter Phone Password → (OK) → ***Yes***

• To confirm and delete records one by one, after 1, select record → Confirm and → ***Delete*** → ***Yes***.

Resetting Ranking

1 →

2 **Reset ranking**

■ **To Reset a Ranking**
Highlight ranking → → ***Reset ranking*** → ***Selected*** → ***Yes***

■ **To Reset Multiple Rankings**
→ ***Ranking reset*** → ***Multiple*** → Check ranking → (Reset) → ***Yes***

■ **To Reset All Rankings**
→ ***Ranking reset*** → ***All*** → Enter Phone Password → (OK) → ***Yes***

Advanced

Advanced Settings ☞P.3-21

- Viewing Phone Book Entry Details via Call Log
- Adding Log Record Numbers to Phone Book
- Adding Call Log Record Numbers to Black List
- Hiding/Showing Ranking

Checking Call Time/Cost

Show charge after call **may not be available depending on your contract conditions. Also,** ***Set max cost limit*** **cannot be activated if** ***Show charge after call*** **is not available.**

Call settings menu includes items below.

Menu Item	Action
All calls	Confirm or reset approximate total call time/cost.
Last call	Confirm or reset approximate call time/cost of the previous call.
Data counter	Confirm or reset approximate incoming/outgoing data volume.
Show charge after call	Set whether to show call time/cost after ending a call.
Set currency	Set or change currency.
Set max cost limit	Set the limit for call cost.

1 → ***Settings*** → ***Call settings*** → ***Call time & cost***

2 **Select item**

• To reset item, press (Reset).

Advanced

Settings

- Check Call Time/Cost (☞P.14-8)
- Check Last Call Time/Cost (☞P.14-8)
- Check Data Counter (☞P.14-8)
- Show/Hide Call Time/Cost after Calls (☞P.14-8)
- Change Call Cost Currency (☞P.14-8)
- Set Call Cost Limit (☞P.14-8)
- Cancel Call Cost Limit (☞P.14-8)

International Calling

1 Enter a phone number including area code

2 ✉ → *International call* → Highlight country → ● ( ) Or ✉ → *International call* → Enter country number → ● ( )

- Country code entry is not required to call SoftBank handsets outside of Japan, regardless of country.

Global Roaming

This handset is compatible with 3G networks. It will not function on GSM or GPRS networks. Apply for Global Roaming Service beforehand. For information, see SoftBank Mobile Website: (http://mb.softbank.jp/en/global_services/)

Setting Network

This handset is SoftBank 3G network compatible. To use this handset outside Japan, switch network (service provider) in 3G Roaming areas.

Selecting a Network

Select network (service provider) for the area where handset is used. Manual selection is also available.

1 ● → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *International call* → *Select operator* → *Select Auto/Manual*

2 Select Network mode

■ **To Set Automatically**
Automatic

■ **To Specify Operator**
Manual → Select an item

Setting Preferred Network

Edit Network list preferentially selected when ***Automatic*** is set.

1 ■ → ***Settings*** → ***Call settings*** → ***International call*** → ***Select operator*** → ***Set priority***

2 **Edit Preferred Network list**

■ **To Select & Add from Network List**
Ⓨ → ***Insert*** → ***Network list*** → Select network

■ **To Add Network**
Ⓨ → ***Insert*** → ***New network*** → In Country code field, enter country code → In Network code field, enter Network code → Enter Network name → ✉ (Save)

- Added network appears at top of Network list.
- To delete network, after 1, highlight network → Ⓨ → ***Delete*** → ***Yes***.
- Items to set in ***New Network*** are as follows.
  Country code: Up to three digits
  Network code: Up to three digits
  Network name: Up to 20 words

Calling Outside Japan

Emergency calls may not be possible outside of Japan depending on network, signal conditions, or handset settings (➲P.3-7).

1 **Enter a phone number including area code →** ☎

2 **Place a call**

■ **To Place a Call to Japan**
Call to Japan

■ **To Place a Call to Visiting Country**
Visiting country

■ **To Place a Call to a Country Other than Japan**
Call to a country Other than Japan → Select country

■ **To Place a Call by Entering Number**
Call this number

- If ***Never*** is checked or ***Roaming dial assistant*** is ***Off***, operation above is not required.

- To place a call by directly entering country number, press 0 for 1 + seconds to enter +. Enter country number, phone number excluding the first ***0*** → Press ☎ to dial. To place a call to Italy, include the first ***0*** if there is one.
- If + and country code is included at beginning of phone number, 2 is not required.

Advanced

Settings

- Save International Code (☞P.14-10)
- Add/Change/Delete Country Number (☞P.14-10)
- Select Network to Access (☞P.14-11)
- Select Preferred Network from List (☞P.14-11)
- Add a New Preferred Network (☞P.14-11)
- Set Roaming Dial Assistant (☞P.14-11)
- Retrieve Network Information Manually (☞P.14-26)
- Seek the Most Prioritized Network (☞P.14-26)

Optional Services

Available optional services are as follows:

Service	Description
Voicemail	Divert all or all unanswered calls to Voicemail Center; access caller messages via handset from within the service area or via a touchtone phone anywhere. ・Set Missed Call Notification to notify missed calls by notification when handset is off or out-of-range (➲P.3-15).
Call Forwarding	When you know you will be unable to answer calls, automatically divert calls to a specified number.
Call Waiting	Put the line on hold to answer another line or alternate between lines. Or toggle lines among multiple lines simultaneously.
Conference Call	Open another line while one is engaged; toggle lines or talk with up to six parties simultaneously.
Call Barring	Restrict incoming or outgoing calls by condition.
Caller ID	Show or hide your own number when placing calls.

Note

- **Call Waiting and Conference Call require separate subscription.**
- **If *Out* appears, services are unavailable. For landline operation or service details, see SoftBank Mobile Website (http://www.softbank.jp).**

Voicemail

Handset forwards Voice Calls to Voicemail Center according to the following conditions:

Forwarding Condition	Description
Always	Handset does not ring/vibrate for incoming calls; calls are diverted automatically. Missed Call Notification does not appear.
No reply	Unanswered calls are diverted after the specified ring time, or when the line is busy or handset is outside service area.

Note

- **Voicemail and Call Forwarding cannot be active at the same time.**
- **Activating Voicemail cancels Call Forwarding.**

Activating Voicemail

1 ■ → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Voice mail/Call forwarding* → *Voice mail on*

2 Select an item

- ■ **To Transfer Immediately**
  Always (0 sec.)
- ■ **To Set Ring Time before Transfer**
  No reply (5 to 30 sec.)

- If *No reply (5 to 30 sec.)* is set, answer call within set ring time to cancel forwarding, or press (Forward) to Voicemail Center to forward immediately.

Canceling Voicemail

1 ■ → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Voice mail/Call forwarding* → *Deactivate All* → *Yes*

Note

- *Deactivate all* **also cancels Call Forwarding.**

Listening to Voicemail Message

When a caller saves a Voicemail message, notification appears in Standby and appears at top of Display.

Indicated by Icons and Messages

- ■ **When Notification Appears**
  Select notification → beside the log
  - Select View → Select record to view message detail.
  - Press (Close) to clear the notification without playing the message.
- ■ **When Notification Does Not Appear**
  ■ → *Phone* → *Call voice mail* → ■ ( )
  Or
  Enter *1416* → / ■ ( )

- To enter numbers, use Keypad.
- If you delete a message you played, disappears.

Activating Missed Call Notification

Notification appears for missed calls while handset is off or outside service area; or when caller saves message at Voicemail Center while the line is engaged.

1 Enter *1414* → / ■ ( )

2 Follow guidance

- Alternatively, press ■ → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Missed call notification* to activate Missed Call Notification.
- Notification is saved as Call Log record.
- Missed Call Notification is complimentary.

Advanced

Settings

- Forward All Calls to Voicemail (Handset Does Not Ring) (☞P.14-7)
- Forward Unanswered Calls to Voicemail (Specify Ring Time) (☞P.14-7)
- Cancel Voicemail/Call Forwarding (☞P.14-7)
- Confirm Current Voicemail/Call Forwarding Settings (☞P.14-7)
- Listen to Voicemail Message (☞P.14-7)
- Set Missed Call Notification (☞P.14-8)

Call Forwarding

Forward incoming calls to a specified number in accordance with the predefined forwarding condition which you can set by call type (Voice Call or Video Call) (➲P.3-15).

Note

- **Call Forwarding and Voicemail cannot be used at the same time.**
- **Activating Call Forwarding cancels Voicemail.**

Activating/Canceling Call Forwarding

Specify a forwarding number beforehand. Specify forwarding number in ***Voice/Video call***, ***Voice call***, or ***Video call***.

1 ■ → ***Settings*** → ***Call settings*** → ***Optional services*** → ***Voice mail/ Call forwarding*** → ***Call forwarding on/Deactivate All***

- When canceled, confirmation appears. Choose ***Yes*** to end operation.

Note

- **Voicemail is also canceled.**

2 ***Voice/Video call***, ***Voice call***, **or** ***Video call***

3 ***Always (0 sec.)*** **or** ***No reply (5 sec.)*** **to** ***No reply (30 sec.)***

4 **Set forwarding number**

- **To Use Previous Forwarding Number**
  Last number → Select number
- **To Enter from Phone Book**
  Phonebook → Search and select entry (➲P.2-14) → Select number
- **To Enter Number Directly**
  Enter number → Enter phone number

- If ***No reply (5 to 30 sec.)*** is set, answer call within set ring time to cancel forwarding, or press ✉ (Forward) to forward immediately.

Advanced

Settings

- Activate & Set Forwarding (☞P.14-7)
- Cancel Voicemail/Call Forwarding (☞P.14-7)
- Confirm Current Voicemail/Call Forwarding Settings (☞P.14-7)

Call Waiting

Separate subscription is required to use this service. For use with Voice Calls only.

Activating/Canceling Call Waiting

1 ■ → ***Settings*** → ***Call settings*** → ***Optional services*** → ***Call waiting***

2 ***On*** **or** ***Off***

- For current status, select ***Get status*** after 1.

Accepting a Second Call

If a call arrives during a call, interrupt tone sounds and notice appears. Put first call on hold to answer.

1 **After interrupt tone sounds,** ■ **(Accept)** → ***Answer(Hold call)/ Answer(End call)***

- Alternatively, press ☎.
- To put current call on hold to answer second call, select ***Hold call***.
- To end current call to answer second call, select ***End call***.

2 **To switch parties,** ☎ → ■ **(Group call)**

3 Switch party

- **To Switch to Group Call**
  Call to all
- **To Switch Party**
  Switch
- **To End Selected Call**
  End this call
- **To End All Calls**
  End all calls

- If one party ends a call with another on hold, press ■ (Answer) to talk with party on hold again.
- If Call Forwarding or Voicemail is set and second call is not answered, it is forwarded to a forwarding number or Voicemail Center.
- If forwarding condition is set to ***Always***, Call Waiting is unavailable.

Advanced

Settings

- Activate/Cancel Call Waiting (☞P.14-7)
- Confirm Current Call Waiting Settings (☞P.14-7)

Conference Call

Talk with up to six parties simultaneously.
This service requires separate subscription.

Placing New Call During a Call

Connecting a second call places first one on hold.

1 During a call → Enter phone number

- To select from Phone Book, press ▽ → ***Phonebook*** → Search and select entry (P.2-14) → Select phone number.
- To select from ***Call log***, press ▽ → ***Call log*** → Select log → ■ ( ).

2 / ■ ( )

- Calling a third party is only possible with Conference Call (not available if a party is on hold).

Switching Party

1 While connected with multiple parties, ■ (Group call) → *Switch*

- If connected party ends call in Conference Call, party on hold remains on-hold. To talk with party on hold, press ■ (Answer) to cancel hold.

Talking with All Parties

1 While connected with multiple parties, ■ (Group call) → *Call to all*

- To talk with one party again, highlight one party → ■ (Group call) → ***Call to this person***.

- To end all calls, press ■ (Group call) → Select ***End all calls***.
- When one party ends the call during Conference Call, continue talking with remaining parties.

Advanced

Advanced Settings ☞P.3-22

- Ending Selected Call

Call Barring

Bar outgoing/incoming Voice Calls, Video Calls or SMS by conditions listed below.

Item		Description
Outgoing call		
	Bar all outgoing calls	Disables calling or sending SMS to all but emergency numbers.
	Bar all international calls	Disables outgoing international calls and SMS.
	Bar international calls	Disables calling or sending SMS to numbers outside of Japan and the country where you are.
Incoming call		
	Bar all incoming calls	Blocks all incoming calls and SMS.
	Bar all roaming calls	Blocks all incoming international calls and SMS.

- Setting Call Barring requires Center Access Code (Network Password) (four-digit number specified at subscription).
- If a call is placed while Call Barring is active, a message appears indicating that Call Barring is active. The message may appear after a while depending on service area.

Note

- **If incorrect Center Access Code (Network Password) is entered three consecutive times, Call Barring is disabled. In this case, change Center Access Code (Network Password). For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (➲P.15-31).**
- **If Call Forwarding or Voicemail is active, *Bar all outgoing calls* and *Bar All incoming calls* cannot be set (Optional Services override Call Barring settings).**

Restricting Outgoing/Incoming Calls

Bar outgoing/incoming calls/transmissions by type (Voice Calls, Video Calls, SMS).

1. ▣ → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Call barring*
2. **Select a restriction type**
   - **For Outgoing Calls**
     Outgoing call → *Bar all outgoing calls*, *Bar all international calls*, or *Bar international calls*
   - **For Incoming Calls**
     Incoming call → *Bar all incoming calls* or *Bar all roaming calls*
3. ***On*** **or** ***Off***
4. **Enter Network Password →** ▣ **(OK)**

Canceling All Barring

Cancel all barring for outgoing or incoming calls.

1. ▣ → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Call barring*
2. *Cancel all barring*
3. **Enter Network Password →** ▣ **(OK)** → *Yes*

Checking Call Barring Status

1 ■ → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Call barring*

2 *Get status* → *All outgoing calls*, *All international calls*, *International calls*, *All incoming calls*, or *All roaming calls*

Advanced

Settings

- Activate/Cancel Outgoing Call Barring (☞P.14-7)
- Activate/Cancel Incoming Call Barring (☞P.14-8)
- Cancel All Call Barring (☞P.14-8)
- Confirm Current Call Barring Settings (☞P.14-8)

Caller ID

Show or hide your own phone number.

Showing & Hiding Caller ID

1 ■ → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Show my number*

2 *On* or *Off*

- After 1, select *Get status* to confirm current setting.
- Regardless of *Show my number* setting, you can show/hide your phone number every time you place a call (➲P.3-19).

Advanced

Settings

- Show/Hide Your Own Number (☞P.14-11)

Advanced Settings

Voice Call

Saving Entered Phone Number to Phone Book

Enter a phone number including area code → Y! → *Add to phonebook* → (➲P.2-19 Entering & Saving Phone Number)

Sending New Message to Entered Number

Enter a phone number → Y! → *Create message* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (➲P.4-4 S! Mail 5, P.4-5 SMS 5)

Showing/Hiding Your Number for a Call

Enter a phone number including area code → Y!

■ **To Hide Your Own Number**

Hide my ID → ☎ / ■ ( )

■ **To Show Your Own Number**

Show my ID → ☎ / ■ ( )

- Otherwise, *Show my number* setting applies.
- Alternatively, enter *186*, *184* → Enter phone number → ☎ / ■ ( ) to show/hide your number.

Setting Mute

During a call, Y! → *Mute*

- During a call, Y! → *Unmute* to switch to a normal call.

Switching to Speakerphone

During a call, ▣ ( ) → ***Yes***

- To cancel Speakerphone, press ▣ ( ) during a call.

Talking in Low Voice

During a call, ▣ → ***Whisper On***

- With ***Whisper On***, your voice is amplified on other party's phone.
- During a call, press ▣ → ***Whisper Off*** for normal call.

Using Functions during Call

During a call, ▣

■ **To Send Push Tones**
Send DTMF → Enter digits → ■ (Send)

■ **To Record Call**
Record → (➔P.10-11)

■ **To Search Phone Book during Call**
Phonebook → (➔P.2-14 Entry Search 3)

■ **To View Call Log Records/Ranking**
Call log → (➔P.3-9)

■ **To View Account Details**
Account details → (➔P.1-10)

■ **To View Message Menu**
Messaging → (➔P.4-1)

■ **To View Calendar**
Calendar → (➔P.10-4)

■ **To View Memo**
Memo → (➔P.10-8)

Video Call

Showing/Hiding Caller ID

Enter a phone number including area code → ▣

■ **To Hide Phone Number**
Hide my ID → ▣ → ***Video call***

■ **To Show Phone Number**
Show my ID → ▣ → ***Video call***

- Alternatively, enter ***186***, ***184*** → Enter phone number → ▣ to show/hide your number.

Setting Outgoing/Incoming Images

■ **To Toggle My Image Pause/Play**
During Video Call, /

■ **To Enlarge/Reduce My Image**
During Video Call, → Adjust size → ■ (OK)

■ **To Adjust Outgoing Image Brightness**
During Video Call, → Adjust brightness → ■ (OK)

■ **To Adjust Outgoing Image Color**
During Video Call, → Select item

■ **To Toggle My Image**
During Video Call, → ***Camera***/***Alternative picture***/***Send picture***

- If ***Send picture*** is selected, select ***Pictures***/***Digital camera*** → Select image → ■ (OK).

■ **To Toggle Screen between My Image & Incoming Image**
During Video Call, → ***Switch screen***

■ **To Toggle Incoming Image Pause/Play**
During Video Call, ▣ → ***Pause incoming image***/***Play incoming image***

■ **To Set Alternative Image**
During Video Call, ▣ → ***Settings*** → ***Alternative picture*** → ***Preset picture***/***Pictures***/***Digital camera***

- To set preset image, select ***Preset picture*** → ■ (Set).
- To select image from Data Folder, select ***Pictures***/***Digital camera*** → Select image → ■ (Set).

■ **To Adjust Incoming/Outgoing Video Quality**
During Video Call, ▣ → ***Settings*** → ***Incoming video quality***/***Outgoing video quality*** → Select an item

■ **To Set Hold Picture**
During Video Call, ▣ → ***Settings*** → ***Hold settings*** → ***Hold during call***/***Hold answer*** → ***Preset picture***/***Pictures***/***Digital camera***

- To set preset image, select ***Preset picture*** → ■ (Set).
- To select image from Data Folder, select ***Pictures***/***Digital camera*** → Select image → ■ (Set).

■ **To Set Whether to Show My Image**
During Video Call, ▣ → ***Settings*** → ***Show my image*** → ***On*** or ***Off***

- Setting is not applied to current Video Call.

Setting Mute

During Video Call, (Mute)/(Unmute)

- Alternatively, during Video Call, press → ***Settings*** → ***Mute my voice*** → ***On***/***Off***.

Switching to Speakerphone

During Video Call, → ***Speaker On*** → ***Yes***/***Speaker Off***

Putting a Video Call on Hold

During Video Call, → ***Hold***/ (Retrieve)

- Image set in ***Hold during call*** is sent while on hold and neither party can hear the other's voice.

Adjusting Video Call Backlight Setting

During Video Call, → ***Settings*** → ***Backlight*** → ***On*** or ***Off***

Adjusting Call Retry Setting

During Video Call, → ***Settings*** → ***Retry with*** → Select an item

Setting Auto Answer

During Video Call, → ***Settings*** → ***Auto answer***

■ To Activate/Cancel Auto Answer

On/Off → ***On*** or ***Off***

- If ***Auto answer*** is set to ***On***, Ringtone and auto answer activates for calls from specified parties.

■ To Specify Parties to Set Auto Answer

Auto answer list → (Add) → ***Phonebook***/***Call log***/***Direct input***

- To select from Phone Book → Enter Phone Password → (OK) → Search and select entry (➲P.2-14).
- To select from Call Log → Enter Phone Password → (OK) → / / / → Select a log.
- To select Direct Input → Enter Phone Password → (OK) → Enter phone number.

■ To Delete Entry in Auto Answer List

Auto answer list

- To Delete a Entry
  Highlight phone number → (Delete) → ***Selected*** → ***Yes***
- To Delete Multiple Entries
  (Delete) → ***Multiple*** → Check name/phone number → (Delete) → ***Yes***
- To Delete All Entries
  (Delete) → ***All*** → ***Yes***

Operating Each Function during a Call

During a call,

■ To Send Push Tones

Send DTMF → Enter digits → (Send)

- To search Phone Book, select ***Send DTMF*** → (Search Phonebook) → Search and select Phone Book entry (➲P.2-14) → (Send).

■ To Search Phone Book Entry

Phonebook → ➲P.2-14 Entry Search 3)

■ To Send Message

Create message → ***S! Mail*** or ***SMS*** → (➲P.4-4 S! Mail 2),P.4-5 SMS 2)

■ To Create & Save Text Memo in Video Call

Notepad → (Add) → Enter text memo → Select Category field → Select category → (Save)

- To edit text memo, select ***Notepad*** → Select text memo → Select Add memo field → Enter text memo → Select Category field → Select category → (Save).

Call Log Records/Ranking

Sending S! Mail from Call Log Records

→ / / / → Select/Highlight a record → ( ) → (➲P.4-4 S! Mail 5)

- If more than one phone number and mail address are saved in Phone Book with the call record, after ( ), select item → (➲P.4-4 S! Mail 5)

Sending SMS from Call Log Records

→ / / / → Select/Highlight a record → → ***SMS*** → (➲P.4-5 SMS 5)

Viewing Phone Book Entry Details via Call Log

→ / / / → Select/Highlight a record → → ***View phonebook***

Adding Log Record Numbers to Phone Book

→ / / / → Select/Highlight record → → ***Add to phonebook*** → (➲P.2-14 Saving Entries from Call Log Records 4)

Adding Call Log Record Numbers to Black List

→ / / / / → Select a record → → ***Add to black list*** → ***Yes***

Hiding/Showing Ranking

→ / / / / → → ***Display setting*** → ***Show ranking***/***Hide ranking***

Conference Call

Ending Selected Call

During Conference Call, highlight party → (Group call) → ***End this call***

Putting All Calls on Hold

During Conference Call, (Group call) → ***Hold all calls***

- To cancel on-hold, press (Group call) → ***Call to all***.

Messaging

Messaging Basics **4-2**

Customizing Mail Address **4-3**

Creating/Sending Messages **4-3**
- S! Mail 4-3
- SMS 4-5
- Graphic Mail 4-6

Incoming Messages **4-7**
- Viewing New Messages 4-7
- Retrieving Messages Manually 4-8
- Viewing from Message List 4-9
- Replying to Received Messages 4-10
- Forwarding Received Messages 4-10

Using Messages **4-11**
- Using Message Information 4-11
- Locking/Unlocking Messages/Templates 4-12
- Deleting Messages/Templates 4-12
- Saving Attached Files to Data Folder 4-13
- Using Mail Group 4-13

Managing Messages **4-14**
- Creating Folders 4-14
- Moving Messages 4-14
- Sorting Messages 4-14
- Sorting Spam 4-15

Advanced Settings **4-16**
- Sending S! Mail 4-16
- Sending SMS 4-19
- Sending Graphic Mail 4-21
- Received Messages 4-21
- Using/Managing Messages 4-22
- Managing Folders 4-25

Messaging Basics

This handset supports S! Mail and SMS messaging. Learn how to send and manage text messages.
Use S! Mail to exchange long text messages with SoftBank and other E-mail compatible handsets, PCs and other mobile devices.
Send Graphic Mail and media files via S! Mail.
Use SMS to exchange short text messages with SoftBank handsets.

Note

- **S! Mail requires separate subscription.**
- **Maximum message size is increased to 2 MB. Sending messages might incur high Packet Communication charges depending on message size and your subscription.**
- **Messages created on handset may not appear on other party's handset correctly.**
- **Received Hangul messages are viewable.**
- **Hangul may be deleted from sent message or appear as spaces on other party's handset.**
- **Send message contains Hangul via E-mail; Hangul may be deleted even if message are sent to Hangul compatible mobile phone.**

	S! Mail[1]	SMS
Entry Items		
Address	○	○
Subject	○	×
Attachment	○	×
Text	○	○
Character Limit	Up to 15,000 double-byte 30,000 single-byte characters (30 KB)[2]	Up to 70 single-/double-byte characters, or up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric[3]
Recipient	SoftBank mobile phones, other E-mail compatible mobile phones, PCs	SoftBank handset
Contents	Long text message, image, sound, Graphic Mail, and Feeling Mail[4]	Short text message Transmit text, pictograms, and symbols, etc.

[1]Maximum message size is 2 MB including address, subject, message text, attachments, etc. (This applies to replay and forward S! Mail messages). Change the limit for sending message size to 300 KB.

[2]Limit for text entry varies with attachment size etc.

[3]When ***Char-code*** is set to ***GSM 7 bit*** (➔P.14-16).

[4]Exchange Feeling Mail only with compatible handsets.

Customizing Mail Address

Change the alphanumerics before the @ in the address (account name).
Default: Account name consists of random alphanumerics.
For details, see SoftBank Mobile Website (http://mb.softbank.jp/en/).
Customizing mail address may help reduce spam.

1. ✉ → *Settings* → *Custom mail address*
2. Select *English* → Follow onscreen instructions
   - After customizing mail address, SoftBank sends a confirmation message.
3. ✉ → *Received msg.* → Select a folder → Select message from Information → *Yes*

Advanced

Settings

- Customize/Change Handset Mail Address (☞P.14-12)

Creating/Sending Messages

Drafts and sent messages are saved in different folders.
Sent messages appear in Sent msg. and drafts in Drafts.
Create and send S! Mail/SMS, Graphic Mail, and attach files.

S! Mail

Note

- Sending messages might incur high Packet Communication charges depending on message size and your subscription. Set *Max creation size* to *300KB* to limit message size (➲P.14-15).
- Messages containing Hangul characters or attachments with Hangul characters are converted to UTF-8 character encoding. Character encoding remains as UTF-8 even if Hangul characters are deleted from message. If character encoding is UTF-8, Graphic Mail and Auto art will be unavailable.
- If Hangul characters are entered in a message containing Japanese characters, Japanese characters in message are converted to UTF-8 character encoding, and character count of Japanese characters increases by 1.5 times. If character count exceeds limit, Hangul characters cannot be entered.
- Hangul characters are viewable only when other party uses Hangul compatible mobile phone.
- Enter phone number in Recipient to send S! Mail containing Hangul characters. If mail address is entered, Hangul characters will not be viewable.
- For Graphic Mail:
  - If text to be inserted (Notepad, Phone Book etc.) contains Hangul characters, Hangul characters will be deleted.
  - If attachment file name is Hangul, file name will be converted to *nonamexx* (xx is number).
  - If part of attachment file name is Hangul, Hangul characters will be deleted.

Sending S! Mail

1 ✉ → ***Create new***
- Alternatively, in Standby, press ✉ for 1 + seconds to open Message creation window.

S! Mail Creation Window

2 **Select Recipient field**

3 ***From phonebook*** **→ Search and select Phone Book entry (➔P.2-14 Entry Search 3)**
- Press ✉ (Multiple) to select multiple addresses from Phone Book at once.

4 **Select number or address**

5 **Select Subject field → Enter subject**

6 **Select Attach field, when attaching files to message (➔P.4-4)**

7 **Select Enter Text field → Enter text**

8 ✉ **(Send)**

- Send S! Mail from ***From history/From mail group/Enter number/Enter address*** (➔P.4-16).
- Enter SoftBank handset numbers or mail addresses in Recipient field. Add up to 20 recipients.
- If CLEAR is pressed with address, subject or text entered or a file attached, an exit confirmation appears. Choose ***Yes*** to save to Draft and exit. Choose ***No*** to exit. Select ***Cancel*** to return to Message creation window.
- If ↩ is pressed with address, subject or text entered or a file attached, an exit confirmation appears. Choose ***Yes*** to exit. Choose ***No*** to return to Message creation window.
- Sent message is saved in Sent msg. or Unsent msg. If ***Auto delete*** (➔P.14-14) is ***On (Except protected)*** and memory is full, the oldest sent messages are deleted automatically (except protected ones) to make room for new ones. If Unsent msg. is full or messages cannot be deleted automatically, memory full confirmation appears. Delete items and then send message.
- During message creation, message size appears next to Create msg in Message creation window.

Attaching Files

Attach media files directly, or Phone Book/Calendar/Tasks entries or Account Details as vcf file or vcs file. Send messages up to 2 MB (including address, subject and text). If message size exceeds ***Max creation size***, attached image size is changed automatically. Alternatively, if message size exceeds ***Picture auto resize***, attached image size changes automatically. Changing its size temporarily is available (➔P.4-18).
Attach up to 20 files per S! Mail message.

Note

- **Some attachments may be lost depending on recipient's handset status. For supported file types, see SoftBank Mobile Website (http://www.softbank.jp).**
- **When attaching video, select a file recorded in Video (➔P.7-9). If file is incompatible, a warning appears.**

1 ✉ → ***Create new*** → **Select Attach field**

2 **Attach file**

■ **To Attach Data Folder Files**
Data Folder → Select a file location → Select a file

■ **To Attach Images Captured by Camera**
Take photo → Capture still image

■ **To Attach Video Recorded by Camera**
Record video → Record video

■ **To Attach Phone Book Entries (vcf file)**
Phonebook details → Search and check entry (➔P.2-14) → ✉ (Add)

■ **To Attach Calendar/Tasks Entries (vcs file)**
Calendar item → Select tab menu → ***Schedule*** or ***Tasks*** → Highlight file → ● (Attach)

- To attach multiple files, select ***Calender item*** → ▽ → ***Multiple*** → Check items → ✉ (Add).

■ **To Attach Memo Saved as VNT Format**
Notepad → Highlight file → ● (Select)

- To attach multiple files, select ***Notepad*** → ▽ (Multiple) → Check items → ✉ (Add).

■ **To Attach Account Details**
Account details → ✉ (Add)

- To add files, select Attach field → ▽ → ***Add file***, and repeat 2.
- When files are attached, file type indicators and file names appear in Attached file list.

: Image : Sound : Video
: vcs file : vcf file : Other

Advanced

Advanced Settings (☞P.4-16)

- Adding Address
- Deleting Address
- Removing Attached File
- Inserting Information into S! Mail Messages
- Moving Cursor to Top/End of Text
- Adding Words to Dictionary (Japanese)
- Setting Conversion
- Saving to Drafts
- Sending Feeling Mail
- Resetting Feeling Setting
- Setting Message Actions
- Using Template to Create S! Mail
- Viewing Graphic Mail
- Saving Graphic Mail as Template

Settings

- Change Message Text Font Size (☞P.14-6)
- Request/Cancel Delivery Report (☞P.14-12)
- Quote Text From Received Message (☞P.14-12)
- Select Reply Setting (☞P.14-12)
- Set "Reply to" Address (☞P.14-13)
- Show/Hide Transmission Progress Bar (☞P.14-13)
- Set/Cancel Auto Delete for Sent Messages When Sent Memory is Full (☞P.14-14)
- Set Max Creation Size (☞P.14-15)
- Set Message Sending Priority (☞P.14-15)
- Set Picture Auto Resize (☞P.14-15)
- Insert/Hide Signature (☞P.14-15)
- Edit Signature (☞P.14-15)

SMS

1 ✉ → ***Create new SMS***

SMS Creation Window

2 Select Recipient field

3 *From phonebook* → Search and select entry (➔P.2-14 Entry Search 3)

4 Select a phone number

5 Select Enter Text field → Enter text

6 ✉ (Send)

- Enter SoftBank handset numbers in Recipient field. Add up to 20 Recipients.
- When entered text exceeds entry limit (➔P.4-2), S! Mail conversion confirmation appears. Choose ***Yes*** to switch to S! Mail. When Hangul text is included, Hangul characters will be converted to UTF-8 character encoding.

• Sent message is saved in Sent msg. or Unsent msg. If ***Auto delete*** (➲P.14-14) is ***On (Except protected)*** and memory is full, the oldest sent messages are deleted automatically (except protected ones) to make room for new ones. If Unsent msg. is full or messages cannot be deleted automatically, memory full confirmation appears. Delete items and then send message.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (☞P.4-19)

- Adding Address
- Deleting Address
- Inserting Information into SMS
- Adding Words to Dictionary (Japanese)
- Setting Conversion
- Saving SMS to Drafts
- Converting SMS to S! Mail
- Deleting All Text

Settings

- Request/Cancel Delivery Report (☞P.14-12)
- Show/Hide Transmission Progress Bar (☞P.14-13)
- Set Mail Service Center Message Expiry Time (☞P.14-16)
- Set Message Center Number (☞P.14-16)
- Change Character Code (☞P.14-16)

Graphic Mail

Creating Graphic Mail

Note

- **Message with Hangul characters cannot be converted to Graphic Mail.**
- **For Graphic Mail, Hangul characters are not available. If text to be inserted (Notepad, Phone Book etc.) contains Hangul characters, Hangul characters will be deleted.**

Examples:

- Changing font size and background color.
- Inserting image and pictograms in Data Folder.
- Scrolling characters to the left and the right.
- For other items, see "Sending S! Mail" (➲P.4-16).

1. ✉ → ***Create new*** → **Select Enter Text field**
2. Y! → ***Graphic Mail (Hold: Send Key)***

Graphic Mail Creation Window

3. ***Size*** → ***Large***, ***Standard***, **or** ***Small*** → **Enter text**
   - To continue, press ✉ (Decorate).
4. ✉ **(Decorate)** → ***Background color***
5. **Select a background color**
6. ✉ **(Decorate)** → ***Image***
7. ***Pictures*** → **Select a file**
   - To insert ***Mail Art***, select ***Mail Art***.
   - If Memory Card is inserted, select from Digital Camera folder.
   - To capture image to insert, select ***Camera***.
8. ✉ **(Decorate)** → ***My Pict.*** → **Select a pictogram** → CLEAR
9. ✉ **(Decorate)** → Y! **(Select area)** → **Move cursor to the first character** → ■ **(Start)** → **Move cursor to the last character** → ■ **(End)** → ***Effect***
10. ***Scrolling***

11 ***Right to left***

- In Graphic Mail creation window, select ***Undo*** to reverse most recent change.
- In Graphic Mail creation window, select ***Cancel*** → ***Yes*** to cancel all graphic settings and return to text entry window.

Decorate S! Mail with Auto Art

1 ✉ → ***Create new***
2 **Select Enter Text field → Enter text**
3 ***楽デコ***
4 **Select Auto Art with ✉ (Next) → ● (OK)**

Incoming Messages

Retrieve complete S! Mail messages automatically or manually.
Auto download: Mail Service Center sends complete S! Mail messages and attachments to handset. Manual retrieval: Mail Service Center sends S! Mail Notice.
Retrieve complete message as required. Learn how to receive, confirm, reply to, or forward text messages.

Note

- **Receiving messages might incur high Packet Communication charges depending on message size and your subscription. Set receiving options → *Auto receiving* to *Off* to receive part of message (➲P.14-15). Select message to receive whole message.**
- **Forwarding/reusing messages containing Hangul characters will convert to UTF-8 character encoding. Character encoding remains as UTF-8 even if Hangul characters are deleted from message. If character encoding is UTF-8, Graphic Mail will be unavailable.**

Viewing New Messages

When receiving new messages, in Standby, notification appears.

Note

- **Default: Handset retrieves complete S! Mail messages, including attachments. Depending on your contract, retrieval may incur charges. Set Manual Retrieval (➲P.4-8).**
- **Default: *Receiving options → Auto receiving* to *On (Up to 1MB)*/*On (Up to 300KB)***
  Handset automatically retrieves complete S! Mail messages, including attachments. Set *Auto receiving* to *Off* to receive part of message (➲P.14-15).
  Select message to receive whole message.

1 Select notification

- If messages are received out of Standby, sender numbers or mail addresses (names if saved in Phone Book), etc. scroll across Display top. Afterward ✉ appears (➔P.1-3, P.14-13).

Number of Messages Received

Information Window (Received Messages)

2 View message

Message Window (S! Mail)

- When a file is attached, a file name and thumbnail appear at the bottom of the message.
- When a Delivery Report arrives, flashes disappears. In Standby, a notification appears.
- Received message is saved in Received msg. If ***Auto delete*** (➔P.14-14) is ***On (Except protected)***/***On (Only read)*** and memory is full, messages are automatically deleted the oldest first to make room for new ones. However, if ***Auto delete*** is ***On (Except protected)***, protected messages are not deleted. If messages cannot be deleted automatically, confirmation appears. Delete messages and retry.

Retrieving Messages Manually

When ***Receiving options*** → ***Home auto settings*** (➔P.14-15) is set to ***Manual retrieval***, S! Mail is temporarily stored on Mail Server; part of the received message is sent to handset as a reception notification. Retrieve complete messages from Mail Server.

1 ✉ → *Received msg.*

2 Select a folder → Select a notification

3 *Retrieve mail*

- If ***Max receiving size*** is set to ***2MB*** and received message exceeds 300KB, confirmation appears. Select ***Within 300KB***/***Maximum***.

• Message List Indicators

Unread Message Notification

: Priority high

: Priority standard

: Priority low

Read Message Notification

: Priority high

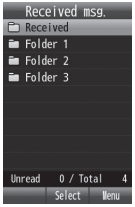
: Priority standard

: Priority low

Viewing from Message List

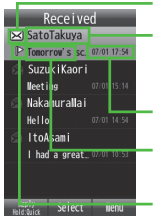
View messages from Received msg., Drafts, Sent msg., or Unsent msg.

1 → *Received msg.*, *Sent msg.* or *Unsent msg.* → Select a folder as required



Mail Folder List Window (Received Message)

2 Select a message



Received Button

Sender or Recipient Address

Saved Date and Time

Heading of Subject or Message

Flag

Message List Window (Received Messages)

- Secret folders do not appear when ***Security*** → ***Secret mode*** is set to ***Hide***. To show secret folders, press → ***Unlock temporarily*** → Enter Phone Password → (OK).
- In Message list window, use to scroll. Use to select phone number in message → (Select).
- In Message window, press / for next/previous message.
- ***No Messages*** appears, when there are no messages in Received msg., Drafts, Sent msg., or Unsent msg. folders.

Message List

These indicators appear in message lists.

• Received Message Indicators

Description	Icon	
	Unread	Read
While Receiving S! Mail		
S! Mail		
Priority high		
Priority standard		
Priority low		
Media file inserted		
Message Notification		
Priority high		
Priority standard		
Priority low		
SMS		
Saved to Phone		
USIM Card SMS		

• Draft Message Indicators

Description	Icon
S! Mail	
Media file inserted	
SMS	

• **Unsent Message Indicators**

Description	Icon
S! Mail	
S! Mail	
Media file inserted	
Resending	
SMS	
SMS	
USIM Card SMS	

• **Sent Message Indicators**

Description	Icon
S! Mail	
S! Mail	
Media file inserted	
SMS	
SMS	
USIM Card SMS	
Delivery Report	
Unread S! Mail	
Unread SMS	

• If ***Security*** → ***Secret mode*** is set to ***Hide***, and in Phone Book, ***Secret mode*** is set to ***On***, only number or address appears for sent/received messages to/from secret entries.

Replying to Received Messages

1 ✉ → ***Received msg.***

2 **Select a folder → Highlight message → ✉ (Reply) to replay**

3 **Create a message (➲P.4-4 S! Mail 5)**

- Reuse received message to reply (➲P.14-12).
- ***Re***: appears in Subject field automatically.
- To send to all recipient, press ✉ → ***Reply to all*** at 2.
- Alternatively, press ✉ → ***Received msg.*** → Select folder → Select message → Y! → ***Reply***/***Reply to all*** → ***S! Mail***/***S! Mail (History)***/***SMS***/***SMS (History)***.
- To reply with a preset template (Quick reply setting → ➲P.4-21), press ✉ (Hold:Quick) for 1 + seconds → Select a template.

Forwarding Received Messages

1 ✉ → ***Received msg.*** → **Select a folder**

2 **Select a message →** Y! **→** ***Forward***

3 **Create a message (➲P.4-4 S! Mail 2)**

- ***Fw***: appears in Subject field automatically.
- To forward received SMS, select S! Mail or SMS.
- Alternatively, press ✉ → ***Received msg.*** → Select folder → Highlight message → Y! → ***Forward*** → ***S! Mail***/***SMS*** to forward.

Advanced

Advanced Settings ☞P.4-21

- Retrieving Part of Received Message
- Forwarding Reception Notification/Server Mail
- Calling Sender
- Deleting Mail Server Messages via Notification

Settings

- Change Quick Reply Message (☞P.14-13)
- Set Received Message Notice Content/Hide Notice (☞P.14-13)
- Select Secret Folder Message Notice Setting (☞P.14-13)
- Link External Light to Incoming Feeling Mail (☞P.14-13)
- Link External Light Color to Incoming Feeling Mail (☞P.14-13)
- Link Vibration to Incoming Feeling Mail (☞P.14-13)
- Set Whether to Sound Handset When Feeling Mail Arrives (☞P.14-13)
- Link Ringtone to Incoming Feeling Mail (☞P.14-13)
- Set Feeling Mail Ringtone Duration (☞P.14-13)
- Change Font Size (☞P.14-13)
- Change Scroll Unit (☞P.14-13)
- Set Max Receiving Size (☞P.14-15)
- Set S! Mail Receiving Options (☞P.14-15)
- Set Auto Receiving Condition (☞P.14-15)
- Edit Auto Receiving Condition (☞P.14-15)
- Set Attached Image Appearance (☞P.14-15)
- Set Attached Image Auto Playback (☞P.14-15)
- Set Attached Sound Auto Playback (☞P.14-15)

Using Messages

Handset automatically sorts messages into five folders by type.

Folder	Message Type
Received msg.	Received messages are saved
Drafts	Incomplete messages are saved
Templates	Created templates are saved
Sent msg.	Sent messages are saved
Unsent msg.	Failed/Canceled/Outgoing messages are saved

Using Message Information

In Message creation window or notification, highlight sender, recipient, phone number or mail address to save to Phone Book, place a call, send message, etc.

Saving to Phone Book

1. ✉ → *Received msg.* → Select a folder → Select a message → Select phone number, mail address, or URL → *Add to phonebook*
2. Save a number to Phone Book
   - ■ **To Save as a New Entry**
     New → (➔P.2-13 Creating New Entries 2)
   - ■ **To Update Existing Entry**
     Update → Search and select entry (➔P.2-14) → Save a number to Phone Book (➔P.2-13)

Saving to Bookmark

1. ✉ → *Received msg.* → Select a folder → Select a message → Select URL → *Add to bookmark*
2. ● (Select) → Enter a title
3. ✉ (Save)

Using Page Links

Use sender's address, phone number, mail address, or URL embedded in message text or Received message window.

1. ✉ → *Received msg.* → Select a folder → Select a message
2. Use linked information
   - ■ **To Place a Voice Call**
     Select a phone number → *Voice call*
   - ■ **To Place a Video Call**
     Select a phone number → *Video call*
   - ■ **To Edit a Number before Call**
     Select a phone number → *Edit before call*
   - ■ **To Send a Message**
     Select a phone number or a mail address → (➔P.4-4 S! Mail 5,P.4-5 SMS 5)
   - ■ **To Access the Internet**
     Select URL → *Open Yahoo! Keitai*

• To message to a phone number, select S! Mail or SMS then create message.

Locking/Unlocking Messages/Templates

Lock a message/template or all messages in a folder. When deleting a locked message, confirmation appears. Cancel lock to delete.

1 ✉ → ***Received msg., Drafts, Templates, Sent msg., or Unsent msg.*** → Select folder as required

2 Lock Message/Template

■ **To Lock a Message/Template**
Highlight message/template → Y! → ***Lock/Unlock*** → ***Selected***

■ **To Lock Multiple Messages**
Y! → ***Lock/Unlock*** → ***Multiple*** → Check messages → ✉ (Lock)

■ **To Lock All Messages**
Y! → ***Lock/Unlock*** → ***All***

Deleting Messages/Templates

Deleting Messages

Delete specified messages or all messages in message folder.

1 ✉ → ***Received msg., Drafts, Sent msg.,*** or ***Unsent msg.*** → Select a folder as required

2 Delete Message

■ **To Delete a Message**
Highlight message → Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Selected*** → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete Multiple Messages**
Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Multiple*** → Check messages → ✉ (Delete) → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete All Messages**
Y! → ***Delete*** → ***All*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → ***Yes***

Deleting Templates

Delete specified templates or all saved templates.

1 ✉ → ***Templates***

2 Delete Templates

■ **To Delete a Template**
Highlight a template → Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Selected*** → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete Multiple Templates**
Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Multiple*** → Check templates → ✉ (Delete) → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete All Templates**
Y! → ***Delete*** → ***All*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → ***Yes***

- If protected messages or templates are included in the specified messages, a confirmation appears.

Saving Attached Files to Data Folder

1 ✉ → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* → Select folder → Select message

2 Y! → *Save*

■ **To Save Items**
Items → Check files → ✉ (Save) → *Save to Pictures*/*Save to Pictograms*/*Save to Mail art*/*Save to Flash®*/*Save to Flash® Ringtones*/*Save to Ring songs · tones*/*Save to Music*

■ **To Save All My Pictograms**
All My Pictograms

■ **To Save Received Graphic Mail as Template**
As template → Enter template name

• If files with same name exist, file name is renamed automatically.

Using Mail Group

Use Mail Group to send messages at once.

Creating Mail Group

1 ● → *Phone* → *Mail group* → ● (New)

• If Mail Group is saved, press Y! → *New group*.

2 Enter group name → Select group name → ● (Add)

3 Search and select Phone Book entry (➔P.2-14)

Sending Message to Mail Group

1 ● → *Phone* → *Mail group*

2 Select Mail Group → ● ( ) → Create message (➔P.4-4 S! Mail 5)

• Alternatively, highlight Mail Group → ✉ ( ).

Advanced

Advanced Settings (☞P.4-22)

- Deleting Message
- Setting Character Code
- Reporting Received Message as Spam
- Moving to Top/Bottom of the Message
- Viewing Mail/Template Details
- Sorting Messages
- Set/Unset Message Flag
- Changing Messages to Read/Unread
- Moving SMS Message to Handset/USIM Card
- Viewing Delivery Report
- Canceling Sent Messages
- Sending Unsent Messages after Editing
- Viewing Error Details for Unsent Message
- Sending Saved Template via S! Mail
- Moving Template
- Copying Template
- Sorting Template
- Managing Template
- Forwarding Server Mail
- Deleting Mail List Messages

Settings

- Set/Cancel Auto Delete for Received Messages When Received Memory is Full (☞P.14-14)
- Set/Cancel Auto Delete for Sent Messages When Sent Memory is Full (☞P.14-14)

Managing Messages

Create folders in ***Received msg.*** and ***Sent msg.***, and set rules to each folder to sort messages automatically.
Set security to created folders. Received msg. and Sent msg. folder cannot be deleted and the settings cannot be changed.
In received message lists, set flag to turn on/off the flag. Messages can be sorted by flag status.

Creating Folders

1 ✉ → ***Received msg.*** or ***Sent msg.***

2 Y! → ***Add new folder***

3 **Edit folder name**

- New folder appears at bottom of list.
- Even if folders with same name exist, notification does not appear.

4 **If confirmation appears, *Yes*/*No***

- If ***Yes***, see (P.4-14 Sorting Messages 3).

Moving Messages

1 ✉ → ***Received msg.*** or ***Sent msg.*** → **Select a folder**

2 **Move Message**

■ **To Move a Message**
Highlight message → Y! → ***Move to folder*** → ***Selected***

■ **To Move Multiple Messages**
Y! → ***Move to folder*** → ***Multiple*** → Check messages → ✉ (Move)

■ **To Move All Messages**
Y! → ***Move to folder*** → ***All***

3 **Select a destination folder**

- Received messages are saved to ***Received msg.*** folder, and sent messages are saved to ***Sent msg.*** folder. To move back to the original folder after moving messages to another folder, operate 2 and select original folder.

Sorting Messages

Automatically sort sent/received messages to specified folder by number or address, etc. Sort messages by S! Mail subject or SMS text. Set up to 20 rules per folder.

1 ✉ → ***Received msg.*** or ***Sent msg.***

2 **Highlight folder** → Y! → ***Auto sort***

- To add a sorting rule for selected folder, press Y! → ***Add rule***.

3 **Set sorting rule**

■ **To Select Phone Number/Mail Address from Phone Book**
Sender (for some windows, ***Recipient***) → ***From phonebook*** → Search and select entry (P.2-14) → Select phone number or mail address

■ **To Select Phone Number/Mail Address from History**
Sender (for some windows, ***Recipient***) → ***From history*** → Select tab menu → ***Sent***/***Received*** → Select a history

■ **To Select Phone Number/Mail Address from Group in Phone Book**
Sender (for some windows, ***Recipient***) → ***From group*** → Select a group

- Groups saved on USIM Card cannot be set as a rule.

■ **To Enter Phone Number/Mail Address Directly**
Sender or ***Sender (Partial match)*** (for some windows, ***Recipient)*** → (***Enter number*** or ***Enter address*** When ***Sender*** (for some windows, ***Recipient***) is selected) → Enter phone number or mail address

■ **To Select a Rule from Text**
Subject → Enter text to set as a rule

4 ***Yes/No***

- Select ***Yes*** to sort messages in Received meg./Sent msg.
- Select ***No*** to sort only new messages.

5 ✉ **(OK)**

Sorting Spam

Messages from unknown mobile address are allotted to ***Spam folder*** without notice.

1 ✉ → ***Settings*** → ***Universal settings*** → ***Anti-spam measures***

2 **Enter Phone Password** → ● **(OK)**

■ **To Sort Unknown Address as Spam**
Unregistered → ***On***

■ **To Sort Message with Spam Filter**
Spam filter → ***On*** → ***Spam filter*** → ✉ (Edit) → (if address already exists, in the list, Y! → Add filter) → ***Sender/Sender (Partial match)/Subject*** → (➲P.4-14 Sorting Messages 3)

■ **To Add Address to Permitted List**
Permitted list → ***On*** → ***Permitted list*** → ✉ (Edit) → (if address already exists, in the list, Y! → Add filter) → ***Sender/Sender (Partial match)/Subject*** → (➲P.4-14 Sorting Messages 3)

- Available only when ***Spam filter/Unregistered*** is ***On***.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (☞P.4-25)

- Changing Folder Name
- Setting Secret to Folder
- Deleting Folders
- Viewing Message/Folder Details
- Changing Sorting Rules
- Deleting Sorting Rules

Settings

- Change Received Message View (☞P.14-13)
- Change Sent Message View (☞P.14-13)
- Sort Unregistered Mobile Address as Spam (☞P.14-14)
- Sort Message with Spam Filter (☞P.14-14)
- Add Address to Permitted List (☞P.14-14)
- Set Address for Report Spam (☞P.14-14)
- Select Save Location for Message (☞P.14-14)

Advanced Settings

Sending S! Mail

Specifying Recipient without Phone Book

In S! Mail creation window, select Recipient field

■ **To Enter Address from History Records**
From history → Select tab menu → ***Sent*** or ***Received*** → Select a record

■ **To Select from Mail Group**
From mail group → Select Mail Group

■ **To Enter Phone Number Directly**
Enter number → Enter phone number

■ **To Enter Mail Address Directly**
Enter address → Enter mail address

Adding Address

In S! Mail creation window, select Recipient field → Y! → ***Add recipients***

■ **To Select from Phone Book**
From phonebook → Search and select entry (➔P.2-14) → Select phone number or mail address

■ **To Enter Address from History Records**
From history → Select tab menu → ***Sent*** or ***Received*** → Select a record

■ **To Select from Mail Group**
From mail group → Select Mail Group

■ **To Enter Phone Number**
Enter number → Enter phone number

■ **To Enter Mail Address**
Enter address → Enter mail address

- The number of addresses appears next to the Recipient field in S! Mail creation window.

Viewing History Details

In S! Mail creation window, select Recipient field → ***From history*** → Select tab menu → ***Sent*** or ***Received*** → Highlight history → ✉ (View)

Deleting Messaging History Records

In S! Mail creation window, select Recipient field → ***From history*** → Select tab menu → ***Sent*** or ***Received***

■ **To Delete a Record**
Highlight record → Y! (Delete) → ***Selected***

■ **To Delete Multiple Records**
Y! (Delete) → ***Multiple*** → Check records → ✉ (Delete)

■ **To Delete All Records**
Y! (Delete) → ***All*** → ***Yes***

Changing Address Type to To/Cc/Bcc

In S! Mail creation window, select Recipient field → Y! → ***Change to To***/***Change to Cc***/***Change to Bcc***

Deleting Address

In S! Mail creation window, select Recipient field

■ **To Delete a Recipient**
Highlight recipient → Y! → ***Remove*** → ***Selected***

■ **To Delete Multiple Recipients**
Y! → ***Remove*** → ***Multiple*** → Check recipients → ✉ (Delete)

■ **To Delete All Recipients**
Y! → ***Remove*** → ***All*** → ***Yes***

Viewing Attached File

In S! Mail creation window, select Attach field → Select a file

Removing Attached File

In S! Mail creation window, select Attach field

■ **To Remove an Attached File**
Highlight file → Y! → ***Remove*** → ***Selected***

■ **To Remove Multiple Attached Files**
Y! → ***Remove*** → ***Multiple*** → Check files → ✉ (Delete)

■ **To Remove All Attached Files**
Y! → ***Remove*** → ***All*** → ***Yes***

Inserting Information into S! Mail Messages

In S! Mail creation window, while creating message, Y! → ***Insert***

■ **To Insert Notepad**
Notepad → Select an item

■ **To Insert Barcode**
Bar code reader → (➔P.10-8 Barcode Reader 2)

■ **To Insert Phone Number from Phone Book**
Phonebook → Search and select entry (➔P.2-14) → Select an item

■ **To Insert Account Details**

Account details → Select an item

■ **To Insert Signature**

Signature

■ **To Insert a Part of Mail Address**

Quick address list → Select an item

- For Graphic Mail, Hangul characters are not available. If text to be inserted (Notepad, Phone Book etc.) contains Hangul characters, Hangul characters will be deleted.

Moving Cursor to Top/End of Text

In S! Mail creation window, while creating message, ▽ → ***Cursor position*** → Select an item

Adding Words to Dictionary (Japanese)

In S! Mail creation window, while creating message, ▽ → ***Add to dictionary*** → (➲P.2-12 Saving to User's Dictionary 2)

Setting Conversion

In S! Mail creation window, while creating message, ▽ → ***Settings***

■ **To Activate/Cancel Prediction**

Prediction → ***On***/***Off***

■ **To Activate/Cancel Learning**

Learning → ***On***/***Off***

■ **To Activate/Cancel Auto Capitalization**

Auto capitalization → ***On***/***Off***

■ **To Activate/Cancel Flexible Search**

Flexible search → ***On***/***Off***

■ **To Reset Learning**

Reset learning → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → ***Yes***

■ **To Clear Records of Pictograms/Symbols**

Clear history → ***Yes***

■ **To Change Font Size**

Font Size → ***Large***/***Standard***/***Small***

■ **To Change Cursor Movement Speed**

Auto cursor → ***Off***/***Slow***/***Normal***/***Fast***/***Very fast***

Saving to Drafts

In S! Mail creation window, ▽ → ***Save to drafts***

- Only messages with recipient, subject, or text entered, or file attached can be saved.

Sending Feeling Mail

In S! Mail creation window, ▽ → ***Feeling setting*** → Select a Feeling → Select pictogram

Resetting Feeling Setting

In S! Mail creation window, ▽ → ***Reset feeling***

Setting Message Actions

In S! Mail creation window, ▽ → ***Action settings***

■ **To Set Whether to Delete Automatically after the Other Party Reads the Message**

Set auto delete → ***On***/***Off***

■ **To Set Reply Request**

Reply request → ***On/Off*** → ***On***

- When ***On*** is set, select ***Edit message*** from ***Reply request*** to edit a message.

■ **To Restrict Message Forwarding**

Forward NG → ***On/Off*** → ***On***

- When ***On*** is set, select ***Edit message*** from ***Forward NG*** to edit a message.

■ **To Restrict Message Deletion**

Delete NG → ***On/Off*** → ***On***

- When ***On*** is set, select ***Edit message*** from ***Delete NG*** to edit a message.

■ **To Restrict Message Access with an Open Question**

Quiz → ***On/Off*** → ***Open question*** → ***Question*** → Enter question → ***Answer*** → Enter answer → ***Message (Correct)*** → Enter message when answer is correct → ***Message (Incorrect)*** → Enter message when answer is incorrect → ✉ (Done)

- To edit question, select ***Edit question***.

■ **To Restrict Message Access with a Multiple Choice Question**

Quiz → ***On/Off*** → ***Multiple choice question*** → ***Question*** → Enter question → Highlight Answer field → ● to select number → Select Example1 to 4 field to enter choices → ***Message (Correct)*** → Enter message when answer is correct → ***Message (Incorrect)*** → Enter message when answer is incorrect → ✉ (Done)

- To edit question, select ***Edit question***.

- When ***Action settings*** are set, the recipient's action can be set.

Changing Maximum Size of Message

In S! Mail creation window, ▽ → ***Sending options → Max creation size → 2MB/300KB***

- To view the size, in Standby, press ✉ → ***Settings → S! Mail settings → Sending options → Max creation size*** (➔P.14-15).
- If image files exceeding specified sizes are attached, the image file will be automatically resized.
- When the setting is changed to 300KB while a message is being created, and an image file exceeding 300KB is attached, a message will appear informing the user that changes cannot be made until the attached file is deleted.

Requesting S! Mail Delivery Report

In S! Mail creation window, ▽ → ***Sending options → Delivery report → On*** or ***Off***

- Set ***On*** to receive a Delivery Report when a message is sent from the Mail Server to the other party. Set this option to message being created.
- If mail address is entered to Recipient field, sending messages fails.

Setting Reply Settings

In S! Mail creation window, ▽ → ***Sending options → Reply settings → On*** or ***Off***

- Set the address in ***"Reply to" address*** (➔P.14-12).

Setting Message Priority

In S! Mail creation window, ▽ → ***Sending options → Priority*** → Select an item

Setting whether to Delete Message from Server after Remote Forwarding

In S! Mail creation window, ▽ → ***Sending options → Remote Fwd action*** → Select an item

- This function is available only when forwarding Server Mail message (➔P.4-25).

Using Template to Create S! Mail

In S! Mail creation window, ▽ → ***Launch template*** → Select a template

- If Subject or message is entered/file is inserted or attached/template is used, confirmation appears. Choose ***Yes*** to discard previous modifications and set up new template.

Sending S! Mail Automatically within Signal Area

In S! Mail creation window, ▽ → ***Send Reservation → Within network → Yes***

Setting Delivery Time

In S! Mail creation window, ▽ → ***Send Reservation → Date & time*** → In Reserved date field, enter reserved date → In Reserved time field, enter reserved time → ● (OK) → ***Yes***

Changing Text Color

In Graphic Mail creation window, ***Font color*** → Select a color → Enter text

Blinking Text

In Graphic Mail creation window, ***Effect → Blink → On*** → Enter text

- To enter normal text subsequently, in Graphic Mail creation window, select ***Effect → Blink → Off*** → Enter text.

Aligning Text

In Graphic Mail creation window, ***Effect → Align*** → Select an item → Enter text

Inserting BGM/Flash®/Line

In Graphic Mail creation window, ***Insert***

■ **To Insert BGM from Data Folder**

BGM → Ring songs · tones or ***Music*** → Select a file

■ **To Record BGM to Insert**

BGM → Record sound → Record sound (➔P.10-11 Recording Sound ❷) → ▽ → ***Add to message***

■ **To Insert Flash®**

Flash → Select a file

■ **To Insert Line**

Line

Canceling Inserted BGM

In Graphic Mail creation window with BGM, ***Insert → Delete BGM***

Changing Entered Text Color/Size/Effect

In Graphic Mail creation window with text entered, ▽ (Select area) → Move cursor to the first character → ● (Start) → Move cursor to the last character → ● (End)

■ **To Change Font Color**
Color → Select a color

■ **To Change Font Size**
Size → Select an item

■ **To Change Effect**
Effect → Select an effect → Select an item

■ **To Cancel These Modifications**
Undo

Viewing Graphic Mail

In Graphic Mail creation window, while creating message, Y! → ***Preview***

Saving Graphic Mail as Template

In S! Mail creation window, Y! → ***Save as template*** → Enter file name

- Available only when text is decorated (P.4-6).

Sending SMS

Specifying Recipient without Phone Book

In SMS creation window, select Recipient field

■ **To Enter from History Records**
From history → Select tab menu → ***Sent*** or ***Received*** → Select a log

■ **To Select from Mail Group**
From mail group → Select Mail Group

■ **To Enter Recipient Phone Number**
Enter number → Enter phone number

Adding Recipient

In SMS creation window, select Recipient field → Y! → ***Add recipients***

■ **To Select from Phone Book**
From phonebook → Search and select entry (P.2-14) → Select phone number

■ **To Enter from History Records**
From history → Select tab menu → ***Sent*** or ***Received*** → Select a log

■ **To Select from Mail Group**
From mail group → Select Mail Group

■ **To Enter Phone Number**
Enter number → Enter phone number

- The number of recipients appears next to the Recipient field in the SMS creation window.

Viewing History Details

In SMS creation window, select Recipient field → ***From history*** → Select tab menu → ***Sent*** or ***Received*** → Highlight history → ✉ (View)

Deleting Messaging History Records

In SMS creation window, select Recipient field → ***From history*** → Select tab menu → ***Sent*** or ***Received***

■ **To Delete a Record**
Highlight record → Y! (Delete) → ***Selected***

■ **To Delete Multiple Records**
Y! (Delete) → ***Multiple*** → Check records → ✉ (Delete)

■ **To Delete All Records**
Y! (Delete) → ***All*** → ***Yes***

Deleting Recipient

In SMS creation window, select Recipient field

■ **To Delete a Recipient**
Highlight recipient → Y! → ***Remove*** → ***Selected***

■ **To Delete Multiple Recipients**
Y! → ***Remove*** → ***Multiple*** → Check recipients → ✉ (Delete)

■ **To Delete All Recipients**
Y! → ***Remove*** → ***All*** → ***Yes***

Inserting Information into SMS

In SMS creation window, while creating message, ▽ → ***Insert***

■ **To Insert Notepad**
Notepad → Select an item

■ **To Insert Barcode**
Bar code reader → (➲P.10-8 Barcode Reader ❷)

■ **To Insert Phone Number from Phone Book**
Phonebook → Search and select entry (➲P.2-14) → Select an item

■ **To Insert Account Details**
Account details → Select an item

■ **To Insert Signature**
Signature

■ **To Insert a Part of Address**
Quick address list → Select an item

Adding Words to Dictionary (Japanese)

In SMS creation window, while creating message, ▽ → ***Add to dictionary*** → (➲P.2-12 Saving to User's Dictionary ❷)

Setting Conversion

In SMS creation window, while creating message, ▽ → ***Settings***

■ **To Activate/Cancel Prediction**
Prediction → ***On***/***Off***

■ **To Activate/Cancel Learning**
Learning → ***On***/***Off***

■ **To Activate/Cancel Auto Capitalization**
Auto capitalization → ***On***/***Off***

■ **To Activate/Cancel Flexible Search**
Flexible search → ***On***/***Off***

■ **To Reset Learning**
Reset learning → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → ***Yes***

■ **To Clear Records of Pictograms/Symbols**
Clear history → ***Yes***

■ **To Change Font Size**
Font size → ***Large***/***Standard***/***Small***

■ **To Change Cursor Movement Speed**
Auto cursor → ***Off***/***Slow***/***Normal***/***Fast***/***Very fast***

Saving SMS to Drafts

In SMS creation window, ▽ → ***Save to drafts***

- Available only when either recipient or text is entered.

Converting SMS to S! Mail

In SMS creation window, ▽ → ***Change to S! Mail*** → ***Yes***

- If SMS containing Hangul characters is converted to S! Mail, Graphic Mail will be unavailable.

Requesting SMS Delivery Report

In SMS creation window, ▽ → ***Sending options*** → ***Delivery report*** → ***On*** or ***Off***

- Set ***On*** to receive a Delivery Report when a message is sent from the Message Center to the other party. Set this option to message being created.

Setting Mail Server Expiry Time

In SMS creation window, ▽ → ***Sending options*** → ***Expiry time*** → Select an item

Deleting All Text

In SMS creation window, ▽ → ***Remove text*** → ***Yes***

Sending SMS Automatically within Signal Area

In SMS creation window, ▽ → ***Send Reservation*** → ***Within network*** → ***Yes***

Setting Delivery Time

In SMS creation window, ▽ → ***Send Reservation*** → ***Date & time*** → In Reserved date field, enter reserved date → In Reserved time field, enter reserved time → ● (OK) → ***Yes***

Sending Graphic Mail

Setting Position to Add Auto Art

In S! Mail creation window, *楽デコ* → (Settings) → ***Pictogram*** → ***Inline+Sentence end***/***Sentence end*** → ■ (OK) → (Send)

- Enter message to add Auto art.

Setting Text Color/Text Size/Background Color

In S! Mail creation window, *楽デコ* → (Settings) → ***Text color***/***Text size***/***Background color*** → ***On***/***Off*** → ■ (OK) → (Send)

- Enter message to add Auto art.

Changing Auto Art Theme

In S! Mail creation window, *楽デコ* → (Settings) → ***Select theme*** → ***Emotional character***/***Black & Simple***/***Normal*** → ■ (OK) → (Send)

- Enter message to add Auto art.

Using Templates

→ ***Templates*** → Select template → ■ (Mail) → Send message (➲P.4-16 S! Mail ❷ to ❽)

Received Messages

Retrieving Messages Manually

→ ***Retrieve new***

Setting Display Size of Attached Image

→ ***Received msg.*** → Select folder → Select message → → ***Settings*** → ***Picture appearance*** → Select an item

Retrieving Part of Received Message

→ ***Received msg.*** → Select folder

■ **To Retrieve a Message**

Highlight message → → ***Retrieve mail*** → ***Selected***

■ **To Retrieve Multiple Messages**

→ ***Retrieve mail*** → ***Multiple*** → Check messages → (Retrieve)

■ **To Retrieve All Messages**

→ ***Retrieve mail*** → ***All***

- If ***Max receiving size*** is set to ***2MB*** and received message exceeds 300KB, confirmation appears. Select ***Within 300KB***/***Maximum***.

Forwarding Reception Notification/Server Mail

→ ***Received msg.*** → Select folder → Select notification → → ***Forward*** → Select an item → (➲P.4-4 S! Mail ❷)

- After selecting a folder, highlight notification → → ***Forward*** → Select an item → (➲P.4-4 S! Mail ❷).

Calling Sender

→ ***Received msg.*** → Select folder → Highlight message → → ***Call*** → ■ ( ) /

- The sender should be logged as a phone number.

Deleting Mail Server Messages via Notification

→ ***Received msg.*** → Select folder → Select notification → → ***Delete*** → Select an item → ***Yes***

Replying to a Message with a Predefined Template

→ ***Received msg.*** → Select folder → Select message → Press (Hold:Quick) for 1 + seconds → Select template

- After selecting a folder, highlight a message → Press (Hold:Quick) for 1 + seconds → Select predefined template.
- After template is selected, message will be sent.

Using/Managing Messages

Viewing Attachment

✉ → ***Received msg.***, ***Sent msg.***, or ***Unsent msg.*** → Select a folder as required → Select message → Select a file

- To save a file other than image file to Data Folder before viewing, in Message window, select a file → ***Save***. For image file, in Message window, select a file → ✉ (Save) → ***Save to Pictures***/***Save to Pictograms***/***Save to Mail art***.
- To register attachment to vcf file or vcs file before viewing, in Message window, select a file → ***Register to Phonebook***, or ***Register to Calendar***.
- If a file requiring Content Key is attached, a confirmation appears. To view the file, choose ***Yes*** and purchase or acquire Content Key.
- Select a file which allows play/view only once → ***Yes***, a confirmation appears.

Changing Mail Group Name

■ → ***Phone*** → ***Mail group*** → Highlight Group name → Y! → ***Rename group*** → Enter Group name

Deleting Mail Group

■ → ***Phone*** → ***Mail group***

■ To Delete a Mail Group

Highlight Mail Group → Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Selected*** → ***Yes***

■ To Delete All Mail Groups

Y! → ***Delete*** → ***All*** → ***Yes***

Removing Member in Mail Group

■ → ***Phone*** → ***Mail group*** → ***Select group***

■ To Remove a Member

Highlight member → Y! (Remove) → ***Selected***

■ To Remove Multiple Members

Y! (Remove) → ***Multiple*** → Check members → ✉ (Remove)

■ To Remove All Members

Y! (Remove) → ***All*** → ***Yes***

Viewing Sender & Recipient

✉ → ***Received msg.*** or ***Sent msg.*** → Select folder → Select message → Y! → ***View mail address***

Copying Message Content

✉ → ***Received msg.*** or ***Sent msg.*** → Select folder → Select message → Y! → ***Copy***

■ To Copy Sender/Recipient Address

Address → Select address

■ To Copy Subject

Subject (➔P.2-16 Specifying Range to Copy/Cut)

■ To Copy Text

Message text (➔P.2-16 Specifying Range to Copy/Cut)

Deleting Message

✉ → ***Received msg.***, ***Sent msg.***, or ***Unsent msg.*** → Select folder as required → Select message → Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Yes***

Setting Picture Appearance

✉ → ***Received msg.*** → Select folder as required → Select message → Y! → ***Settings*** → ***Picture appearance*** → Select an item

Setting Font Size

✉ → ***Received msg.***, ***Sent msg.***, or ***Unsent msg.*** → Select folder as required → Select message → Y! → ***Settings*** → ***Font size*** → Select an item

Changing Scroll Unit

✉ → ***Received msg.***, ***Sent msg.***, or ***Unsent msg.*** → Select folder as required → Select message → Y! → ***Settings*** → ***Scroll unit*** → Select an item

Setting Character Code

✉ → ***Received msg.*** → Select folder → Select message → Y! → ***Char-code*** → Select an item

Reporting Received Message as Spam

✉ → ***Received msg.*** → Select folder → Select message → Y! → ***Report spam*** → ✉ (Send)

Moving to Top/Bottom of the Message

✉ → ***Received msg.***, ***Sent msg.***, or ***Unsent msg.*** → Select folder as required → Select message → Y! → ***Scroll jump*** → Select an item

Viewing Mail/Template Details

✉ → ***Received msg.***, ***Templates***, ***Sent msg.*** → Select folder as required → Select message or template → Y! → ***Detail***

- Alternatively, press ✉ → ***Received msg.***, ***Drafts***, ***Templates***, ***Sent msg.***, or ***Unsent msg***. → Select folder as required → Highlight message/template → Y! → ***Detail***.

Sorting Messages

✉ → ***Received msg.***, ***Drafts***, ***Sent msg.*** or ***Unsent msg***. → Select folder as required → Y! → ***Sort by*** → Select an item

- Sort messages by following items.
  - By time (***Time*** ↓ /***Time*** ↑)
  - By recipients/sender (***Recipients***/***Sender***)
  - By read or unread messages (***Read/Unread***)
  - By subject (***Subject***)
  - By message size (***Size***)
  - By attachment (***Attach***)
  - By locked/unlocked message (***Lock***)
  - By flag (***Flag***)
- When ***Recipients***, ***Sender*** or ***Subject*** is selected, messages are sorted in order by single-byte symbol, single-byte number, single-byte alphabet, single-byte Katakana, double-byte Hiragana, double-byte Katakana, Hangul, Kanji, Pictograms, double-byte number, double-byte symbol and double-byte alphabet. When ***Subject*** is selected, messages with ***Untitled*** appear first.

Set/Unset Message Flag

✉ → ***Received msg.*** → Select folder → Highlight message → Y! → ***Set flag (Press:1key)***/***Unset flag (Press:1key)***

- Alternatively, press ✉ → ***Received msg.*** → Select folder → Highlight message → 1 %.

Changing Messages to Read/Unread

✉ → ***Received msg.*** → Select a folder

■ To Change a Message to Read/Unread

Highlight message → Y! → ***Switch to unread***/***Switch to read*** → ***Selected***

■ To Change Multiple Messages to Read/Unread

Y! → ***Switch to unread***/***Switch to read*** → ***Multiple*** → Check messages → ✉ (Unread) / ✉ (Read)

■ To Change All Messages

Y! → ***Switch to unread***/***Switch to read*** → ***All***

- Setting toggles according to each selection.

Moving SMS Message to Handset/USIM Card

✉ → ***Received msg.***, ***Sent msg.*** or ***Unsent msg***. → Select folder as required → Highlight SMS → Y! → ***Move to USIM***/***Move to Phone***

- Save up to ten messages to USIM Card. The number of messages that can be saved varies according to the USIM Card.
- When moving received SMS messages in a personal folder to USIM Card, a confirmation appears. Choose ***Yes*** to move to USIM Card.

Sending Draft Message

✉ → ***Drafts*** → Select message → ✉ (Send)

- When recipient is not entered, ✉ (Send) is unavailable.

Editing & Sending Sent Messages

✉ → ***Sent msg.*** → Select folder → Select message → ✉ (Edit) → (➲P.4-4 S! Mail 2, P.4-5 SMS 2)

- Alternatively, press ✉ → ***Sent msg.*** → Select folder → Highlight message → ✉ (Edit).

Viewing Delivery Report

✉ → ***Sent msg.*** → Select folder → Select a message with ***Delivery report*** setting → Y! → ***Report***

- Available only when SMS or S! Mail with phone number in Recipient field is sent.

Canceling Sent Messages

✉ → ***Sent msg.*** → Select folder → Select message to cancel → Y! → ***Set sent cancel*** → ***Yes*** → ***Let me cancel the mail transmitted sometime ago*** is sent

Sending Unsent Messages after Editing

✉ → ***Unsent msg.*** → Select message → Y! → ***Edit & Send*** → (➲P.4-4 S! Mail 2, P.4-5 SMS 2)

- Alternatively, press ✉ → ***Unsent msg***. → Highlight message → Y! → ***Edit***.

Resending Unsent Messages

✉ → ***Unsent msg***. → Highlight message → ✉ (Resend)

Viewing Error Details for Unsent Message

✉ → ***Unsent msg.*** → Highlight message → Y! → ***Error details***

Viewing Saved Template

✉ → ***Templates*** → Select template

Editing Saved Template

✉ → ***Templates*** → Select saved template → ■ (Mail) → Select Enter text field → Edit message → Y! → ***Save as template*** → Enter file name

Sending Saved Template via S! Mail

✉ → ***Templates*** → Select template → Y! → ***Send via message*** → (➲P.4-4 S! Mail 2)

Sending Template

✉ → ***Templates***

■ **To Send via Message**

Highlight templates → Y! → ***Send*** → ***Via message*** → (➲P.4-4 S! Mail 2)

■ **To Send via Infrared**

Via infrared → Check templates → ✉ (Send) (➲P.13-3)

Moving Template

✉ → ***Templates***

■ **To Move a Template**

Highlight template → Y! → ***Move*** → ***Selected*** → Select a destination

■ **To Move Multiple Templates**

Y! → ***Move*** → ***Multiple*** → Check templates → ✉ (Move) → Select a destination

■ **To Move All Templates**

Y! → ***Move*** → ***All*** → Select a destination

- To create new folder, press Y! (Create) → Enter folder name.

Copying Template

✉ → ***Templates***

■ **To Copy a Template**

Highlight template → Y! → ***Copy*** → ***Selected*** → Select a location to copy

■ **To Copy Multiple Templates**

Y! → ***Copy*** → ***Multiple*** → Check templates → ✉ (Copy) → Select a location to copy

■ **To Copy All Templates**

Y! → ***Copy*** → ***All*** → Select a location to copy

- To create new folder, press Y! (Create) → Enter a folder name.

Sorting Template

✉ → ***Templates*** → Y! → ***Sort by*** → Select an item

Managing Template

✉ → ***Templates*** → Select folder as required

■ **To Change Template Name**

Highlight template → Y! → ***Manage*** → ***Rename*** → Enter name

■ **To Create Folder**

Y! → ***Manage*** → ***Create folder*** → Enter folder name

■ **To Change Folder Name**

Highlight folder → Y! → ***Manage*** → ***Rename folder*** → Enter folder name

■ **To View Contents Key**

Y! → ***Manage*** → ***Content key info*** → Select Content Key

■ **To Purchase/Acquire Contents Key**

Highlight template → Y! → ***Manage*** → ***Download Content key***

Viewing Server Mail

✉ → ***Server mail*** → ***Retrieve mail list*** → When a confirmation appears, choose ***Yes***

Updating Mail List

✉ → ***Server mail*** → ***Retrieve mail list*** → ✉ (Update)

Receiving Mail List Message

✉ → ***Server mail***

■ **To Receive a Message**

Retrieve mail list → If a confirmation appears, choose ***Yes*** → Highlight message → ■ (Get)
Or
Retrieve mail list → If a confirmation appears, choose ***Yes*** → Highlight message → Y! → ***Get*** → ***Selected***

■ **To Receive a Selected Message**

Retrieve mail list → If a confirmation appears, choose ***Yes*** → Y! → ***Get*** → ***Multiple*** → Check messages → ✉ (Get)

■ **To Receive All Messages**

Retrieve mail list → If a confirmation appears, choose ***Yes*** → Y! → ***Get*** → ***All***

- Alternatively, select ***Retrieve mail list*** → If a confirmation appears, choose ***Yes*** → Y! → ***Retrieve all***.

Forwarding Server Mail

✉ → ***Server mail*** → ***Retrieve mail list*** → If a confirmation appears, choose ***Yes*** → Highlight message → Y! → ***Remote forward*** (P.4-4 S! Mail 2)

- ***Fw***: appears in Subject field automatically.
- Set whether to delete message from Server after forwarding Server Mail message (P.4-18 Setting whether to Delete Message from Server after Remote Forwarding).

Deleting All Server Mail

✉ → ***Server mail*** → ***Delete all*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → Select item

Deleting Mail List Messages

✉ → ***Server mail*** → ***Retrieve mail list*** → If a confirmation appears, choose ***Yes***

■ To Delete a Message

Highlight message → Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Selected*** → ***Yes***

■ To Delete Multiple Messages

Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Multiple*** → Check messages → ✉ (Delete) → ***Yes***

■ To Delete All Messages

Y! → ***Delete*** → ***All*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → ***Yes***

Viewing Server Mail Usage

✉ → ***Server mail*** → ***Server mail memory***

- To update status, press ■ (Update).

Viewing Memory Status

✉ → ***Memory status*** → Select tab menu → Y! (Count) / Y! (Size)

- ***Received msg.***, ***Drafts***, ***Sent msg.*** ***Unsent msg.*** and ***SMS (USIM)*** memory appears.
- USIM Card ***SMS (USIM)*** appears in ***Count*** only.
- To delete contents of current item, select ✉ (Delete) (P.12-12 Deleting Registered/Saved Data).

Managing Folders

Changing Folder Name

✉ → ***Received msg.*** or ***Sent msg.*** → Highlight folder → Y! → ***Rename*** → Enter name

- Changing folder name for ***Received*** or ***Sent folder*** is not available.

Setting Secret to Folder

✉ → ***Received msg.***/***Sent msg.***/***Templates*** → Highlight folder → Y! → ***Set***/***Unset secret*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → If a confirmation appears, press ■ (OK)

- Secret folders are ***Hide*** in ***Secret mode***. To cancel Secret Mode temporarily, press Y! → ***Unlock temporarily*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK).

Viewing Message/Folder Details

✉ → ***Received msg.***/***Sent msg.***/***Templates*** → Highlight folder → Y! → ***Details***

Deleting Folders

✉ → ***Received msg.***/***Sent msg.***/***Templates*** → Highlight folder → Y! → ***Delete***/***Delete folder*** → Enter Phone Password as required → ***Yes***

- Deleting ***Received*** folder and ***Sent folder*** folder are not available.

Changing Sorting Rules

✉ → ***Received msg.***/***Sent msg.*** → Highlight folder → Y! → ***Auto Sort*** → Highlight rule → Y! → ***Replace rule*** → (P.4-14 Sorting Messages 3)

Deleting Sorting Rules

✉ → ***Received msg.*** or ***Sent msg.*** → Highlight folder → Y! → ***Auto Sort***

■ To Delete a Rule

Highlight rule → Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Selected***

■ To Delete Multiple Rules

Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Multiple*** → Check rules → ✉ (Delete)

■ To Delete All Rules

Y! → ***Delete*** → ***All*** → ***Yes***

Memo

Internet Services

5

Internet Services 5-2
Web Certificates (SSL/TLS) 5-2
Opening Saved Pages 5-3

Yahoo! Keitai 5-3
Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu 5-3
Viewing Page from Yahoo! Keitai Menu List 5-3
Entering URL 5-3
Entering URL from History 5-3

PC Site Browser 5-4
PC Site Browser Homepage 5-4
Entering URL 5-4
Entering URL from History 5-4

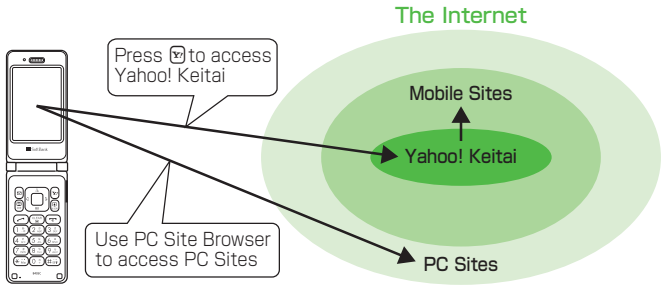
Page Operations 5-5
Selecting Menu 5-5
Entering Text 5-6
Page Zoom 5-6
Multi Page (Tab) 5-6
Buttons & Check Boxes 5-7
Streaming from Page Link 5-7

Bookmarks & Saved Pages 5-8
Saving Bookmarks 5-8
Accessing Bookmarks 5-8
Saving Pages 5-8
Opening Saved Pages 5-8

Advanced Settings 5-9
Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser 5-9
Yahoo! Keitai 5-11
PC Site Browser 5-11
Page Operations 5-11
Bookmarks 5-12
Saved Pages 5-13

Internet Services

Access Mobile sites via Yahoo! Keitai or Internet sites via PC Site Browser.
View Web page contents or download media files.



- In this guide, "Yahoo! Keitai" refers to SoftBank Mobile Internet portal and the service itself. "PC sites" are sites accessible via PC Site Browser. "Internet" refers to both Internet and Mobile Internet sites.
- Before using Internet, retrieve Network Information.

Note

- **Separate subscription is required for Internet services.**
- **Internet connections incur Packet Communication charges.**

Web Certificates (SSL/TLS)

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) and Transport Layer Security (TLS) are encryption protocols for secure Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information (credit card numbers, etc.) and authentication.
Confirm electronic certificates saved on handset (P.5-10).

Note

- **Using SSL/TLS**
  When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open a page.
  Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of usage, SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., Entrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Inc. and SECOM Trust Systems Co., Ltd., COMODO Japan Inc. are not liable for the security of SSL/TLS. No liability is assumed for any damage associated with SSL/TLS use.

Opening Saved Pages

Retrieved Mobile Internet pages are temporarily saved in a cache. The cache remains even after a session ends or handset is turned off. When full, the oldest pages are automatically deleted to make room for new ones.
When a saved page is opened again, it may open from the Cache. For the latest content, reload the page.

- When another USIM Card is inserted, cache contents are automatically deleted.
- When a page with an expiry date is saved, the page is automatically deleted upon expiry.

Yahoo! Keitai

Use Yahoo! Keitai to view page contents or download image/music files.
Alternatively, access Yahoo! Keitai from Main menu, History, Bookmarks, Web search, or by entering URL.

Note

- **When *Send referer* is set to *Not send*, pages may not open (➲P.5-10).**

Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

1 Y!

2 **Select an item**

- When accessing Mobile site for the first time, a screen for Retrieving Network Information appears at 1. After the retrieval, website appears.
- To open PC Site Browser from Yahoo! Keitai, press Y! → ***Switch to PC site browser*** → ***This page*** or ***Link*** → If a warning appears, press ■(OK).

Viewing Page from Yahoo! Keitai Menu List

1 ■ → ***Yahoo!*** → ***Menu list***

Entering URL

1 ■ → ***Yahoo!*** → ***Enter URL***

- Default: "http://" is set.

2 **Enter URL**

- Alternatively, in a page, press Y! → ***Enter URL*** → Enter URL.
- In URL field, URL for current page is entered.

Entering URL from History

Accessed URLs from Yahoo! Keitai are saved in Yahoo! Keitai History.
Access URL to save up to 50 URLs in History.

1 ■ → ***Yahoo!*** → ***History***

2 **Select website**

- Alternatively, in a page, press Y! → ***Manage content*** → ***History*** → Select website.
- To access last viewed page, press ■ → ***Yahoo!*** → ***Last page***.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (☞P.5-11)
- Moving to Main Menu

Settings
- Delete Cache/Cookie/Certificates (☞P.14-16)
- Show/Hide Manufacture Number (☞P.14-16)
- Send/Hide Referrer (☞P.14-16)
- Select Cookie Setting (☞P.14-17)
- Confirm Root Certificate (☞P.14-17)
- Set Certificate Retention Period (☞P.14-17)
- Initialize Browser (☞P.14-17)
- Reset Settings (☞P.14-17)

PC Site Browser

Use PC Site Browser to view page contents or download image/music files from PC sites. Alternatively, access PC Site Browser from Homepage, History, Bookmarks, Web search, or by entering URL.

Note

- **When *Send referer* is set to *Not send*, pages may not open (➲P.5-10).**
- **Viewing rich contents sites may incur high Packet Communication charges.**

PC Site Browser Homepage

1 ■ → ***Yahoo!*** → ***PC site browser*** → ***Homepage***
- If a warning appears, press ■ (OK).

2 Select an item
- Activate PC Site Browser, 💻 appears.
- In PC Site Browser, only document files can be downloaded or streamed.
- Some sites may not appear correctly.
- To open Yahoo! Keitai from PC Site Browser, press Y! → ***Switch to Yahoo! Keitai*** → ***This page***.

Entering URL

1 ■ → ***Yahoo!*** → ***PC site browser*** → ***Enter URL***
- Default: "http://" is set.

2 Enter URL
- If a warning appears, press ■ (OK).

- Alternatively, in a page, press Y! → ***Enter URL*** → Enter URL.
- In URL field, URL for current page is entered.

Entering URL from History

Accessed URLs from PC Site Browser are saved in History.
Access URL to save up to 50 URLs in History.

1 ■ → ***Yahoo!*** → ***PC site browser*** → ***History***

2 Select website
- If a warning appears, press ■ (OK).

- Alternatively, in a page, press Y! → ***Manage content*** → ***History*** → Select website.
- To access last viewed page, press ■ → ***Yahoo!*** → ***PC site browser*** → ***Last page***.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (☞P.5-11)

- Opening Homepage
- Changing Page Layout

Settings

- Delete Cache/Cookie/Certificates (☞P.14-17)
- Show/Hide Manufacture Number (☞P.14-17)
- Send/Hide Referrer (☞P.14-17)
- Select Cookie Setting (☞P.14-18)
- Select Script Setting (☞P.14-18)
- Confirm Root Certificate (☞P.14-18)
- Set Certificate Retention Period (☞P.14-18)
- Show/Hide Warning (☞P.14-18)
- Initialize Browser (☞P.14-18)
- Reset Settings (☞P.14-18)

Page Operations

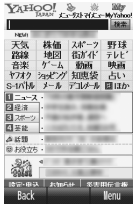
Zoom in/out text and images shown in page. Alternatively, select menu to link page, set function with radio button.

Selecting Menu

1 / to scroll up or down

- Press or to scroll up or down several lines.
- When a horizontal scroll bar appears, use / to scroll to the left or the right.

2 Highlight menu → (Select)



Yahoo! Keitai Top Page

- Press (Back) / (CLEAR) with no previous page, you are prompted to close Internet connection. Choose ***Yes*** to close it.
- Press (Back) / (CLEAR) to return previous page.
- Highlight link → (Select) to move to page.
- Press → ***Next*** to return to the page viewed before pressing (Back) / (CLEAR).
- Press for 1 + seconds to mute BGM in page.

Entering Text

1. **Select Text field**
2. **Enter text**

Note

- Text entry and item selection varies by page.

Page Zoom

1. [Y!] → ***Manage content*** → ***Zoom in/out***
2. [Navigation key] **to select a magnification** → [■] **(Save)**

Multi Page (Tab)

Use tabs at the top of Display to view pages.
Open up to three pages simultaneously.

1. **View a page**

■ **To Open in a New Tab**
Highlight a link to view → [Y!] → ***Tab menu*** → ***Open new tab***

■ **To Toggle Tabs**
[Y!] → ***Tab menu*** → ***Switch to other tabs*** → [Navigation key] to switch to a tab to view → [■] (Select)

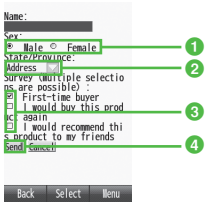
- Alternatively, press [✱] for 1 + seconds to toggle tabs.

■ **To Close a Selected Tab**
[Y!] → ***Tab menu*** → ***Close selected tab***

■ **To Select & Close a Tab**
[Y!] → ***Tab menu*** → ***Close other tabs*** → [Navigation key] to switch to a tab → [■] (Select)

- Yahoo! Keitai and PC sites cannot be opened simultaneously.
- Some pages may open in a new tab automatically.
- When multiple tabs are open, some pages may be partially obscured. Close unnecessary tabs.

Buttons & Check Boxes



1 Radio button
Select one item only. Highlight an item with ○ → ■ (Select) (appearing as ◉).

2 Menu field
Open a menu and select an item. Highlight menu → ■ (Select) → Highlight an item → ■ (Select).

3 Check box
Select multiple items. Highlight items with □ → ■ (Select) (appearing as ☑).

4 Command button
Perform operations assigned to a button. Highlight a command button → ■ (Select).

Streaming from Page Link

1 Open a page containing a page link

2 Highlight a link → ■ (Select)

Advanced

Advanced Settings (☞P.5-9)

- Copying Text
- Refreshing Page
- Entering URL to Open Another Site/Page
- Sending Access History
- Deleting Access History
- Exiting Browser

Settings

■ Yahoo! Keitai

- Set Text Size in Yahoo! Keitai Pages (☞P.14-6)
- Change Page Font Size (☞P.14-16)
- Set Encoding (☞P.14-16)
- Set Page Scroll Unit (☞P.14-16)
- Show/Hide Page Images (☞P.14-16)
- Play/Mute Page Sounds (☞P.14-16)
- Set Save Location for Images in a Page, etc. (☞P.14-16)

■ PC Site Browser

- Set Text Size in PC Site Browser (☞P.14-6)
- Change Page Font Size (☞P.14-17)
- Set Encoding (☞P.14-17)
- Set Scroll Unit (☞P.14-17)
- Show/Hide Page Images (☞P.14-17)
- Play/Mute Page Sounds (☞P.14-17)
- Set Save Location for Images in a Page, etc. (☞P.14-17)

Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Save site URLs to Bookmarks. Save page content to Saved Pages. Open pages without establishing an Internet connection.

Saving Bookmarks

Save up to 50 bookmarks each for Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser.

1. Open a page
2. Y! → *Bookmarks* → *Save*
3. Enter title

Accessing Bookmarks

1. ■ → *Yahoo!* → *PC site browser* as required → *Bookmarks*
2. Select a bookmark

Note

- Internet connections may incur Packet Communication charges.

Saving Pages

Save up to 30 pages each for Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser.

1. Open a page
2. Y! → *Saved pages* → *Save*
3. Enter title

Opening Saved Pages

1. ■ → *Yahoo!* → *PC site browser* as required → *Saved pages*
2. Select a page

Note

- If USIM Card that was inserted when page was saved is replaced, saved page will not open.

Advanced

Advanced Settings ☞P.5-12

- Saving Bookmark by Direct Entry
- Editing Bookmark Title/URL
- Sending Bookmark URL via S! Mail
- Sending Bookmark URL via SMS
- Sending Bookmark URL via Infrared
- Creating Folders in Bookmark List
- Moving Bookmark to Folders
- Changing Bookmark Order
- Saving Bookmark to Data Folder
- Viewing Bookmark Details
- Deleting Bookmarks
- Renaming Saved Pages
- Deleting Saved Pages

Advanced Settings

Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser

Copying Text

In a page, Y! → ***Copy text***

■ **To Copy Selected Text**

◆ to move cursor to the first character to copy → ● (Start) → ◆ to specify a range → ● (End)

■ **To Copy All Text in Text Entry Window**

Y! (All)

Refreshing Page

In a page, Y! → ***Refresh***

Entering URL to Open Another Site/Page

In a page, Y! → ***Enter URL*** → Enter URL

Entering URL from History

In a page, Y! → ***Enter URL*** → Y! → ***Insert*** → ***EnterURL logs*** → Select URL

- Alternatively, press ● → ***Yahoo!*** → (***PC site browser***) → ***Enter URL*** → Y! → ***Insert*** → ***EnterURL logs*** → Select URL.
- Up to ten URL logs appear, the latest first. When the limit is reached, the oldest page is deleted automatically.

Searching with New Window

In a page, Y! → ***Manage content*** → ***Web search*** → Enter text

- Alternatively, press ● → ***Yahoo!*** → (***PC site browser***) → ***Web Search***.

Searching Text

In a page, Y! → ***Manage content*** → ***Search*** → Enter text to search

- Words that match are highlighted. Press ✉ (Prev) / ● (Next) to view the previous or following match. To return to a page, press Y! (Cancel).

Moving to Top/Bottom of Page

In a page, Y! → ***Manage content*** → ***Jump in page*** → ***Page to top***/***Page to bottom***

Sending URL

In a page, Y! → ***Manage content*** → ***Send URL*** → ***S! Mail***/***SMS*** → (➲P.4-4 S! Mail ❷, P.4-5 SMS ❷)

Opening Previously Viewed Page

In a page, Y! → ***Manage content*** → ***History*** → Select URL

- Alternatively, press ● → ***Yahoo!*** → (***PC site browser***) → ***History*** → Select URL.
- Save up to 50 accessed URLs.
- To open in a new tab, highlight URL → Y! → ***Open new tab***.

Sending Access History

In a page, Y! → ***Manage content*** → ***History*** → Highlight URL → Y! → ***Send URL*** → ***S! Mail***/***SMS*** → (➲P.4-4 S! Mail ❷, P.4-5 SMS ❷)

- Alternatively, press ● → ***Yahoo!*** → (***PC site browser***) → ***History*** → Highlight URL → Y! → ***Send URL*** → ***S! Mail***/***SMS***.

Deleting Access History

In a page, Y! → ***Manage content*** → ***History***

■ **To Delete a History**

Highlight a URL → Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Selected*** → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete Multiple Histories**

Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Multiple*** → Check histories → ✉ (Delete) → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete All Histories**

Y! → ***Delete*** → ***All*** → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → ***Yes***

- Alternatively, press ● → ***Yahoo!*** → (***PC site browser***) → ***History*** → Highlight URL → Y! → ***Delete***.

Zooming Page in/out

In a page, Y! → ***Manage content*** → ***Zoom in/out*** → ▮ to adjust volume → ● (Save)

Viewing Flash®

In a page, open Flash® file → ▼ → ***Manage Content → Flash® menu***

■ **To Pause/Play**
Pause or ***Play***

■ **To Play from Beginning**
Play from start

Viewing Only Selected Frame

In a page, ▼ → ***Manage Content → Frame in***

- Some pages may be divided into multiple sections. Such a section is referred to as "Frame".
- To return to normal view, press ▼ → ***Manage Content → Frame out***.

Viewing Page Details

In a page, ▼ → ***Manage Content → Details***

■ **To View Page Information**
Page information

■ **To View Server Certificate**
Server Certification

Changing Font Size

In a page, ▼ → ***Settings → Font size*** → Select an item

Changing Character Code

In a page, ▼ → ***Settings → Encoding*** → Select an item

- If page text appears garbled, changing character encoding may solve the problem.

Changing Scroll Unit

In a page, ▼ → ***Settings → Scroll unit*** → Select an item

Show/Play Image/Sound

In a page, ▼ → ***Settings → Downloads***

■ **To Set Image**
Images → Show images/Do not show

■ **To Set Sound**
Sounds → Play sounds/Do not play

Setting Saving Location

In a page, ▼ → ***Settings → Save to → Memory card prior/Phone/Always ask***

Clearing Cache

In a page, ▼ → ***Settings → Memory manager → Clear cache → Yes***

Deleting Cookies

In a page, ▼ → ***Settings → Memory manager → Delete cookies → Yes***

Deleting Certificates

In a page, ▼ → ***Settings → Memory manager → Delete certificates → Yes***

Setting Manufacture Number Notification

In a page, ▼ → ***Settings → Security → Manufacture number → On*** or ***Off***

Sending/Not Sending Referrer Information

In a page, ▼ → ***Settings → Security → Send referer*** → Select an item

- Referrer is a link source URL information. It is sent to Web server when accessing websites.

Enabling Cookies

In a page, ▼ → ***Settings → Security → Cookies*** → Select an item

- Select ***Confirm*** for acceptance confirmation every time before a cookie is saved.
- Cookie automatically saves identification information of visitors to handset. Cookies contain user information and allow sites to recognize users and track preferences.

Checking Root Certificates

In a page, ▼ → ***Settings → Security → Root certificates*** → Select a certificate → ■ (OK)

- View electronic certificate preinstalled on handset.

Certificating Retention

In a page, ▼ → ***Settings → Security → Certificate retention*** → Select an item

Initializing Saved Information

In a page, ▼ → ***Settings → Initialized browser*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → ***Yes***

- Initialize browser settings or information such as Bookmarks or Saved pages.

Resetting Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser Settings

In a page, Y! → ***Settings*** → ***Reset settings*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → ***Yes***

Exiting Browser

In a page, Y! → ***End application*** → ***Yes***

Yahoo! Keitai

Moving to Main Menu

In a page, Y! → ***Yahoo! Keitai***

PC Site Browser

Opening Homepage

In a page, Y! → ***Homepage***

Enabling Script

In a page, Y! → ***Settings*** → ***Security*** → ***Script*** → Select an item

Viewing Warning Messages

In a page, Y! → ***Settings*** → ***Warning messages*** → ***On*** or ***Off***

- Set this function to show or hide warnings when activating PC Site Browser, or toggling between Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser.

Changing Page Layout

In a page, Y! → ***Small screen*** or ***PC screen***

Page Operations

Saving Phone Number/Mail Address

In a page containing phone number/mail address, select phone number or mail address → ***Save Number*** → ***Phone*** or ***USIM***

■ **To Save as a New Entry**

New → (➔P.2-13 Creating New Entries 2)

■ **To Update Entry**

Update → Search and select Phone Book entry (➔P.2-14) → Enter each item (➔P.2-13)

- Available phone numbers and mail addresses appear underlined.

Sending Mail to Number/Mail Address

In a page containing phone number/mail address, select phone number or mail address → ***Create Message*** → ***S! Mail***/***SMS*** → (➔P.4-4 S! Mail 5, P.4-5 SMS 5)

- Available phone numbers and mail addresses appear underlined.

Calling Phone Number

In a page containing phone number, select phone number → ***Voice Call*** or ***Video Call***

- Available phone numbers appear underlined.

Using URL to Open Another Page

Select URL in a page

- Available URLs appear underlined.

Saving Images/Other Files from Pages

■ **To Save Page Images**

In a page, Y! → ***Save files*** → ***Save items*** → Select image → ***Save***/***Save to Pictograms***/***Save to mail art***

- For Yahoo! Keitai, select an image to save only when there are multiple images.

■ **To Save Background Images**

In a page, Y! → ***Save files*** → ***Save BG image*** → ***Save***

■ **To Save Background Sound**

In a page, Y! → ***Save files*** → ***Save items*** → ***Save***

- They cannot be saved with PC Site Browser.
- In a page with image, select ♪ to save sound.

■ **To Save Linked Files**

In a page, highlight a link → ■ (Select) → ***Save***

- For Auto Save files, select link to save files.
- The following operations are available when you highlight a link and press ■ (Select) or save a file (available options vary depending on file type).
  Play: Play file (e.g., media file)
  Display：Show file
  Set as：Save file to Wallpaper or Ringtone
  Details：Show file details
  Back to browser/***Back***: Return to page

- If files with same name exist, notification appears, choose ***Yes*** to save it with a different name. Choose ***No*** to edit the file name.

Bookmarks

Toggling between Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser Bookmark

In a page, Y! → ***Bookmarks*** → ***Open list*** → ✉ ( ) / ✉ ( )

- Alternatively, press ■ → ***Yahoo!*** → (***PC site browser***) → ***Bookmarks*** → ✉ ( ) / ✉ ( ).

Opening Bookmarked Website

In a page, Y! → ***Bookmarks*** → ***Open list*** → Select a bookmark

- To open in a new tab, highlight bookmark → Y! → ***Open new tab***.

Saving Bookmark by Direct Entry

In a page, Y! → ***Bookmarks*** → ***Open list*** → Y! → ***Add bookmark*** → Select Title field → Enter title → Select URL field → Enter URL → ✉ (Save)

- Alternatively, press ■ → ***Yahoo!*** → (***PC site browser***) → ***Bookmarks*** → Y! → ***Add bookmark*** → Select Title field → Enter title → Select URL field → Enter URL → ✉ (Save).

Editing Bookmark Title/URL

In a page, Y! → ***Bookmarks*** → ***Open list*** → Highlight bookmark → Y! → ***Edit*** → Select Title field → Edit title → Select URL field → Edit URL → ✉ (Save)

- Alternatively, press ■ → ***Yahoo!*** → (***PC site browser***) → ***Bookmarks*** → Highlight bookmark → Y! → ***Edit*** → Select Title field → Edit title → Select URL field → Edit URL → ✉ (Save).

Sending Bookmark URL via S! Mail

In a page, Y! → ***Bookmarks*** → ***Open list*** → Highlight bookmark → Y! → ***Send*** → ***Via message*** → ***S! Mail*** → Check bookmarks → ✉ (Send) → (P.4-4 S! Mail 2)

- Alternatively, press ■ → ***Yahoo!*** → (***PC site browser***) → ***Bookmarks*** → Highlight bookmark → Y! → ***Send*** → ***Via message*** → ***S! Mail*** → Check bookmarks → ✉ (Send).

Sending Bookmark URL via SMS

In a page, Y! → ***Bookmarks*** → ***Open list*** → Highlight bookmark → Y! → ***Send*** → ***Via message*** → ***SMS*** → (P.4-5 SMS 2)

- Alternatively, press ■ → ***Yahoo!*** → (***PC site browser***) → ***Bookmarks*** → Highlight bookmark → Y! → ***Send*** → ***Via message*** → ***SMS***.

Sending Bookmark URL via Infrared

In a page, Y! → ***Bookmarks*** → ***Open list*** → Highlight bookmark → Y! → ***Send*** → ***Via infrared*** → (P.13-3)

- Alternatively, press ■ → ***Yahoo!*** → (***PC site browser***) → ***Bookmarks*** → Highlight bookmark → Y! → ***Send*** → ***Via infrared***.

Creating Folders in Bookmark List

In a page, Y! → ***Bookmarks*** → ***Open list*** → Y! → ***Create folder*** → Enter folder name

- Alternatively, press ■ → ***Yahoo!*** → (***PC site browser***) → ***Bookmarks*** → Y! → ***Create folder*** → Enter folder name.

Moving Bookmark to Folders

In a page, Y! → ***Bookmarks*** → ***Open list***

■ To Move a Bookmark

Highlight bookmark → Y! → ***Move*** → ***Selected*** → Select a destination folder

■ To Move Multiple Bookmarks

Y! → ***Move*** → ***Multiple*** → Check bookmarks → ✉ (Move) → Select a destination folder

■ To Move All Bookmarks

Y! → ***Move*** → ***All*** → Select a destination folder

- Alternatively, press ■ → ***Yahoo!*** → (***PC site browser***) → ***Bookmarks*** → Highlight bookmark → Y! → ***Move***.

Changing Bookmark Order

In a page, Y! → ***Bookmarks*** → ***Open list*** → Highlight bookmark → Y! → ***Change order*** → ◉ to move cursor to a destination → ■ (Select)

- Alternatively, press ■ → ***Yahoo!*** → (***PC site browser***) → ***Bookmarks*** → Y! → ***Change order*** → Use ◉ to move cursor to a destination → ■ (Select).

Saving Bookmark to Data Folder

In a page, Y! → ***Bookmarks*** → ***Open list*** → Highlight bookmark → Y! → ***Save to data folder*** → ***Phone/Memory card*** → ***Yes***

- Alternatively, press ■ → ***Yahoo!*** → (***PC site browser***) → ***Bookmarks*** → Highlight bookmark → Y! → ***Save to data folder*** → ***Phone/Memory card*** → ***Yes***.

Viewing Bookmark Details

In a page, Y! → ***Bookmarks*** → ***Open list*** → Highlight bookmark → Y! → ***Details***

- Alternatively, press ■ → ***Yahoo!*** → (***PC site browser***) → ***Bookmarks*** → Highlight bookmark → Y! → ***Details***.

Deleting Bookmarks

In a page, Y! → ***Bookmarks*** → ***Open list***

■ **To Delete a Bookmark**

Highlight bookmark → Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Selected*** → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete Multiple Bookmarks**

Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Multiple*** → Check bookmarks → ✉ (Delete) → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete All Bookmarks**

Y! → ***Delete*** → ***All*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → ***Yes***

- Alternatively, press ■ → ***Yahoo!*** → (***PC site browser***) → ***Bookmarks*** → Highlight bookmark → Y! → ***Delete***.

Saved Pages

Toggling between Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser Saved Page

In a page, Y! → ***Saved pages*** → ***Open list*** → ✉ ( ) / ✉ ( )

- Alternatively, press ■ → ***Yahoo!*** → (***PC site browser***) → ***Saved pages*** → ✉ ( ) / ✉ ( ).

Opening Saved Pages in a Page

In a page, Y! → ***Saved pages*** → ***Open list*** → Select saved pages

- To open in a new tab, highlight saved page → Y! → ***Open new tab***.

Renaming Saved Pages

In a page, Y! → ***Saved pages*** → ***Open list*** → Highlight entry → Y! → ***Rename*** → Enter name

- Alternatively, press ■ → ***Yahoo!*** → (***PC site browser***) → ***Saved pages*** → Highlight entry → Y! → ***Rename*** → Enter name.

Changing Order of Saved Pages

In a page, Y! → ***Saved pages*** → ***Open list*** → Highlight entry → Y! → ***Change order*** → ⊙ to move cursor to a destination → ■ (Select)

- Alternatively, press ■ → ***Yahoo!*** → (***PC site browser***) → ***Saved pages*** → Highlight entry → Y! → ***Change order*** → Use ⊙ to move cursor to a destination → ■ (Select).

Deleting Saved Pages

In a page, Y! → ***Saved pages*** → ***Open list***

■ **To Delete an Item**

Highlight entry → Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Selected*** → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete Multiple Items**

Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Multiple*** → Check entries → ✉ (Delete) → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete All Items**

Y! → ***Delete*** → ***All*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → ***Yes***

- Alternatively, press ■ → ***Yahoo!*** → ***Saved pages*** → Highlight entry → Y! → ***Delete***.

Memo

Digital TV

6

Enjoy One Seg in Widescreen 6-2
One Seg 6-2

Digital TV Precautions 6-3
Reception 6-3
Battery 6-3
Charging 6-3

Channel Setup (Area Setup) 6-3

Watching TV 6-4
Watching TV 6-4
G-Guide Mobile (Japanese) 6-5
Data Broadcast (Japanese) 6-5
TV Links 6-5

Receiving Call While Watching TV 6-6
Receiving Call 6-6
Receiving Mail 6-6

Record/Playback Programs 6-7
Recording Programs 6-7
Playing Recorded Programs 6-8

TV Timer/TV Timer Recording 6-8
Setting Timer via EPG 6-8
Manual Timer Settings 6-8
Viewing Reservation 6-9

Advanced Settings 6-9
While Watching TV 6-9
TV Timer/TV Timer Recording 6-11

Enjoy One Seg in Widescreen

This handset supports One Seg terrestrial digital broadcasts.
One Seg is referred to as "Digital TV" in this guide.

Setting up Channels

Set up channels to watch Digital TV (➔P.6-3).

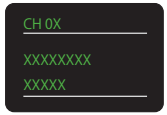
Watching TV

In Standby, press [TV] for 1 + seconds to activate TV (➔P.6-4).

Recording/Playing/Reservation

Record and reserve TV programs with TV timer recording. Play recorded programs (➔P.6-6).

Downloading Electric Program Guide

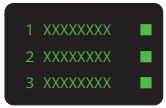


Watch Data Broadcasts to get program-related information (➔P.6-5).

Watching Data Broadcasts

Download an electric program guide to find the desired TV program (➔P.6-5).

TV Link



Use TV links to participate in programs (➔P.6-5).

One Seg

One Seg is a terrestrial digital broadcast service supporting mobile television and Data Broadcasts in Japan. The six megahertz band assigned to each digital channel is divided into 13 segments: 12 dedicated to HDTV broadcasting and the remaining "One Seg" to mobile devices.
One Seg service began on April 1, 2006, in the three largest urban areas and 13 prefectures in Japan. For details, access the Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting Website:

- The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting Website:
  http://www.dpa.or.jp/english/(PC)
  http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/(mobile) Japanese

Digital TV Precautions

Please confirm the following precautions before using TV.

- This handset supports One Seg terrestrial digital television broadcast service available only in Japan.
- Do not use TV while driving a vehicle or riding a bicycle. (mobile phone use while driving is prohibited by the revised Road Traffic Law since November 1, 2004.) For TV use while walking, road safety precautions should always apply.
- Incoming transmissions may affect audio/visual signal. Use of another handset near this handset may also affect TV.

Reception

Digital TV may not be viewable in the following places:

- Too far from or too close to broadcasting stations.
- In mountainous areas or near tall buildings.
- Aboard trains or in moving vehicles.
- Near high-voltage lines, neon lights, or wireless base stations.
- Near railroad tracks or highways.
- In underground shopping malls or tunnels.
- Anywhere jamming signals are broadcast or reception is blocked.

Battery

When battery level is (▭), Digital TV is not available.

- If battery runs out while watching, TV automatically ends.

Charging

Charge battery while viewing Digital TV.

- Use specified Charger only.
- Keep Charger cord away from Antenna; may cause interference.
- Charging takes longer when TV is active.

Channel Setup (Area Setup)

Handset contains local channel information. Before using TV for the first time, specify your area to tune in channels.

1. **(1 + seconds)**
2. **Confirmation appears, choose *Yes***
3. **Select a region**
4. **Select a province**
5. **Select a local area**
   - Channel search starts.
   - To cancel channel search, select ***Cancel***.
6. **(Next) → Enter name**

Watching TV

When channels are set, watching TV, program guide, Data Broadcast, and TV links are available.

Watching TV

1 (1 + seconds)

2 Select channel

- To change channels one at a time, use .
- Alternatively, in TV window, press → ***Set channels*** → ***Channel switch*** → Select a channel to change channel.

3 To exit TV, → *Yes*

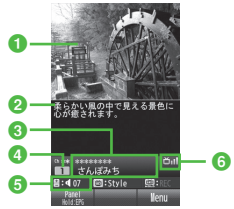
- Alternatively, in TV window, press → ***Exit***.

• To adjust volume while watching TV, press / .

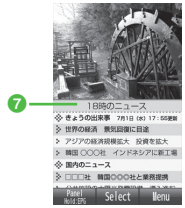
Key Assignments

Operation	Item
/	Adjust volume
(Panel)	Show/Hide panel
(Hold:EPG)	View program
	Show menu
	Toggle screen
(for 1 + seconds)	Record/End recording

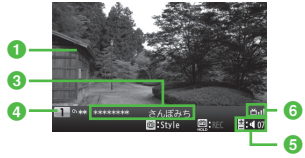
TV Window



Portrait/Show 3 to 6
(With Subtitle)



Portrait/Show
Data Broadcast



Landscape/Show 3 to 6

Landscape/Hide 3 to 6

1 TV Image
2 Subtitle
3 Station name/Program name
4 Channel
5 Volume
6 Signal strength
7 Data Broadcast

• Data Broadcast is only available in Portrait view.

G-Guide Mobile (Japanese)

"G ガイドモバイル " (G-GUIDE Mobile) is a convenient application that combines Program guides for terrestrial analog and digital broadcasting. Search TV programs by genre or keyword and retrieve them anytime and anywhere.

1 [TV] → ***Program guide***

- When Program guide is activated for the first time, Initial setting window for *G ガイドモバイル* (G-GUIDE Mobile) appears. Perform initial settings to access Program guide.

- In program guide, use [◆] to highlight program → [✉] (TV 起動) to show TV window. Also press [●] to show detailed information.

Data Broadcast (Japanese)

In addition to audio/visuals, Data Broadcast is available. Follow onscreen instructions to get program-related information or enjoy interactive TV services.

Note

• No Communication charges apply for receiving Data Broadcast. However, Communication charges apply for using interactive services provided by Data Broadcast or services based on the Internet.

1 While watching TV, [TV] to highlight an item → *Select*

- Internet connection confirmation may appear for Data Broadcast/transmissions from broadcaster. Information is free, however, accessing links/related services incurs Internet connection fees.

TV Links

Procedures for saving links vary according to the program. Check information in Data Broadcasts.

Saving TV Links

1 For a program offering Data Broadcast, select a link source

Opening TV Links

1 [TV] **→ *TV links* → Select TV links → *Yes***

Advanced

Advanced Settings ☞P.6-9

- Viewing Program Information
- Selecting Channels via Thumbnail View
- Changing to Data Fullscreen View
- Setting Subtitle Display
- Deleting TV Links
- Viewing TV Link Details
- Returning to Data Broadcast Top Page
- Starting Recording While Watching Current Programs
- Checking Shortcut Key Assignments

Settings

- Select Connection Notification Type (☞P.14-19)
- Show/Hide Manufacture Number (☞P.14-19)
- Delete Station Data (☞P.14-19)
- Show/Hide Indicators in Landscape View (☞P.14-19)
- Set Whether to Show Videos in Landscape View (☞P.14-19)
- Set Whether to Show Videos in Portrait View (☞P.14-19)
- Adjust Display Brightness (☞P.14-19)
- Set View Mode When TV is Activated (☞P.14-19)
- Adjust Sound Quality (☞P.14-19)
- Select Language (☞P.14-19)
- Handle Incoming Calls & Alarms (☞P.14-20)
- End TV after Setting Duration (☞P.14-20)
- End TV after Phone Closed (☞P.14-20)

Receiving Call While Watching TV

Receiving Call

Incoming call window appears. Press [Call key] to answer a call.

The other party's name/phone number appears during the call. End the call to return to Digital TV.

- To reject call, press [Y!] (Reject).

Receiving Mail

Sender's address, etc. appears at top of Display.

- When returning to Standby leaving messages unread, total number of new and unread messages is shown in Received msg.
- Voice Call or incoming message may affect the quality of TV audio or visual reception. Handset use near handset while TV is active, may affect audio or visual reception quality.

Record/Playback Programs

- Format and insert Memory Card before recording (➔P.12-8).
- Never remove Memory Card while recording. Damage or accidental data loss may result.
- Recording is only available with sufficient remaining memory and battery.
- Recording stops when battery runs low; charge battery while recording.
- Recorded programs cannot be copied/forwarded or attached to S! Mail.
- Handset allows 72 minutes recording to handset and up to 12 hours recording to Memory Card per one program. Note that recording for 12 hours requires about 2GB of Memory Card.
- Recording time is approximately 90 minutes with a 256 MB Memory Card.

Copyrights
This mobile phone encryption technology prevents unauthorized use through data encryption and authentication.
Use only ISDB-T Mobile Video Profile (SD-Video standard) compatible device to playback recorded data.
Handset divides recorded files based on this standard.

Note

- **Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only, and prohibit unauthorized use.**
- **Recorded content may be lost or damaged accidentally or due to a malfunction. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration.**
- **Recorded data cannot be copied to another recordable media, such as other Memory Cards, etc.**

Recording Programs

1 In TV window, [TV] (1 + seconds)

- Recording starts.

2 [TV] (1 + seconds) to end recording

- Both TV image and Data Broadcast information (if any) are recorded. Recording without text is also available (➔P.14-19).
- Changing volume, window size, or sound settings does not affect recordings.

Note

- **If Memory/Battery runs low, recording stops (recorded clip is saved).**
- **When Voice Call request is accepted, recording continues. Confirmation appears for incoming TV Call.**
- **With movie set for Ringtone, TV recording takes priority over the Movie Ringtone (default Ringtone may sound).**

Playing Recorded Programs

1 [TV] → ***TV player***

- Alternatively, in TV window, press [Y!] → ***TV player*** to show TV player.

2 **Select a file**

- Press [Memory card] to play a file stored on Memory Card.
- Playback of video is resumed from where previously stopped.
- Press [Pause] to pause, press [Play] to play.
- Use [Navigation] to fast forward/rewind. Press once for x2, twice for x10.
- Press [Play] to stop fast forwarding/rewinding.
- Press [Hold:Stop] (1 + seconds) to stop playing.

- To view detail, perform 1 → Highlight a file → [Y!] → ***Details***.
- To change the file name, perform 1 → Highlight a file → [Y!] → ***Rename*** → Enter a new file name.
- To delete the recorded file, perform 1 → Highlight a file → [Y!] → ***Delete*** → ***Selected*** → ***Yes***.

Advanced

Settings

- Set Recording Type (☞P.14-19)
- Select Save Location (☞P.14-19)

TV Timer/TV Timer Recording

Save up to five time slots. However, if ***Once*** is selected under data in ***Date***, only TV programs within one week can be recorded/reserved with timer. Set each time slot for up to 72 minutes of recording to handset and 12 hours of recording to Memory Card per one program. Note that 12 hours of recording requires a 2GB Memory Card.

Precautions for Timer Recording

- End the current operations.
- Confirm battery is adequately charged (or record while charging).
- Check that there is enough free space on Memory Card.

Saving Location for Recorded Programs

- If the saving location for recording video is set to Memory Card without Memory Card inserted, it will be saved in handset.
- If there is not enough free space in set saving location (phone or Memory Card), recorded video is saved in an alternative location (Memory Card or phone).

Start/End Time

Digital TV receives programs slightly after scheduled start time; recording may start before reserved program.
Recording ends a few seconds after Timer end time.

Via EPG (↻P.6-5)

Use EPG to Record or view program.

Setting Timer via EPG

1 [TV] → ***Reservation list***

2 [New] → ***Via EPG***

- See EPG application's help menu for operational instructions.

Manual Timer Settings

1 [TV] → ***Reservation list***

2 [New] → ***Manual***

3 ***Recording*** → ***On*** or ***Off***

- Set ***On*** to record, ***Off*** to watch.

4 ***Date*** → ***Once*** (→ Enter date)/ ***Everyday***/***Selected days***

- If ***Selected days*** is selected, check day to reserve.

5 **In Start time field, enter start time**

6 **In End time field, enter end time**

7 ***Channel*** → **Select a channel**

- Press [Manual] to enter a channel number.

8 ***Program*** → **Enter program name**

9 [Save]

- As the recording/viewer reservation time is neared, Alarm notification time is activated via Display and Alarm.
  Exit all active functions; handset returns to Standby.

Viewing Reservation

1 ▣ → ***Reservation list***

2 ***Reserve*** **or** ***Result*** **→ Select an item**

- Switch ***Reserve*** or ***Result*** tabs to view reservations before/after start time.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (☞P.6-11

- Editing Reservations
- Viewing Memory Remaining

Settings

- Set Alarm (☞P.14-18)
- Set Alert Tone (☞P.14-18)
- Set Volume (☞P.14-18)
- Set Vibration (☞P.14-18)
- Set Notification Light (☞P.14-18)
- Set Reminder Time (☞P.14-19)
- Set Alarm Duration (☞P.14-19)
- Set Alarm Sound/Vibration in Manner Mode (☞P.14-19)
- Set Save Location (☞P.14-20)

Advanced Settings

While Watching TV

Viewing Program Information

In TV window, Y! → ***Program info.***

■ **To View Program Details**

Select a program

■ **To Set Timer Recording**

Highlight a program → ✉ (Record)

- If you select a program that is currently on air, the recording immediately starts.

■ **To Set Timer Watching**

Highlight a program → Y! → ***Programming***

■ **To View Reservation List**

Y! → ***Reservation list***

■ **To View Free Memory Space**

Y! → ***Memory remaining*** → ***Phone/Memory card***

Editing/Setting Areas

In TV window, Y! → ***Set channels*** → ***Change area***

■ **To Change Reception Areas**

Select an area

■ **To Set New Area**

Select an available area → ***Yes*** → Select a region → Select a province → Select a local area → ■ (Next) → Enter a name

- Set up to ten areas.

■ **To Reset Area**

Highlight an area → Y! → ***Set area info.*** → Select area → Select region → Select a province → Select a local area → ■ (Next) → Enter a name

■ **To Update Channels in the Area**

Highlight an area → Y! → ***Update channels*** → ***Update all/Update further***

- ***Update all*** : Delete saved channel then update starts.
- ***Update further*** : Add newly received channel; or overwrite saved channel with same No.

■ **To Rename Areas**

Highlight an area → Y! → ***Rename*** → Enter name

■ **To Reset All Channel Details**

Y! → ***Reset*** → ***Yes***

■ **To View Area Details**

Highlight an area → Y! → ***Details***

■ **To Delete Areas**

Highlight an area → Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Yes***

Editing/Setting Channels

In TV window, Y! → ***Set channels*** → ***Channel switch***

■ **To Change Channel Numbers**

Highlight a channel → Y! → ***Move*** → ▣ to Move cursor to desired location → ■ (OK)

■ **To Update Channels**

Y! → ***Update channels*** → ***Update all***/***Update further***

■ **To View Channel Details**

Highlight a channel → Y! → ***Details***

■ **To Delete Channel Details**

Highlight a channel → Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Selected*** → ***Yes***

- To Delete Multiple Channels
  Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Multiple*** → Check channels → ✉ (Delete) → ***Yes***
- To Delete all Channels
  Y! → ***Delete*** → ***All*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → ***Yes***

Saving Channel Details

In TV window, Y! → ***Set channels*** → ***Save channel*** → Select a channel

Setting Channel Selection

In TV window, Y! → ***Set channels*** → ***Select setting*** → Select an item

Selecting Channels via Thumbnail View

In TV window, Y! → ***Channel preview*** → Select a channel

Changing to Data Fullscreen View

In TV window, Y! → ***Data view***

- Press Y! (TV) for TV image.

Setting Subtitle Display

In TV window, Y! → ***Show subtitle*** or ***Hide subtitle***

- ***Show subtitle*** and ***Hide subtitle*** are TV program dependent features.
- Sometimes subtitle area does not indicate that subtitles are available.

Deleting TV Links

In TV window, Y! → ***TV links***

■ **To Delete a TV Link**

Highlight TV link → Y! (Delete) → ***Selected*** → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete Multiple TV Links**

Y! (Delete) → ***Multiple*** → Check TV links → ✉ (Delete) → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete All TV Links**

Y! (Delete) → ***All*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → ***Yes***

- Alternatively, press 📺 → ***TV links*** → Y! → ***Delete***.

Viewing TV Link Details

In TV window, Y! → ***TV links*** → Highlight a TV link → Y! → ***Details***

- Alternatively, press 📺 → ***TV links*** → Highlight a TV link → Y! → ***Details***.

Returning to Data Broadcast Top Page

In TV window, Y! → ***Back to top***

Setting Data Broadcast Preference

In TV window, Y! → ***Settings*** → ***Set broadcast data***

■ **To Set Recording Type**

Set recording → Select an item

■ **To Select Save Location**

Image location → Select an item

■ **To Select Connection Notification Type**

Notify connection → Select an item

■ **To Set Manufacture No. Notification**

Manufacture number → ***On*** or ***Off***

■ **To Delete Station Data**

Delete station data → Highlight an item → Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Yes***

- To delete all stations, press Y! → ***Delete all*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → ***Yes***.

Setting Screen

In TV window, Y! → ***Settings*** → ***Display***

■ **To Set Display Pictogram**

Display pict → ***On*** or ***Off***

■ **To Set Landscape View**

Landscape style → Select an item

■ **To Set Portrait View**

Portrait style → Select an item

■ **To Adjust the Screen Brightness**

Display brightness → ▣ to adjust brightness → ■ (Select)

■ **To Set Screen When Activating TV**

First view → Select an item

Changing Sound Setting

In TV window, Y! → ***Settings*** → ***Sound***

■ **To Adjust Sound Quality**

Sound mode → Select an item

■ **To Select Language**

Sound language → Select an item

Setting the Saving Location for Recorded Files

In TV window, Y! → ***Settings*** → ***Save recording to*** → Select an item

Handling Incoming Calls & Alarms

In TV window, Y! → ***Settings*** → ***Calls & Alarms*** → Select an item → Select action

Setting Auto Power Off

In TV window, Y! → ***Settings*** → ***Auto power off*** → ***Auto power off***/***Phone closing*** → Select an item

Starting Recording While Watching Current Programs

In TV window, Y! → ***Start recording*** → 10 (1 + seconds)

- Alternatively, while recording, press Y! in TV window → ***Stop recording*** → ***Yes*** to end recording.

Checking Shortcut Key Assignments

In TV window, Y! → ***Help***

TV Timer/TV Timer Recording

Daily/Weekly Timer Recording

● → ***TV*** → ***Reservation list*** → ✉ (New) → ***Manual*** → ***Date*** → Select ***Everyday*** or ***Selected days***

- If ***Selected days*** is selected, select a day to set.

Entering Program Name

● → ***TV*** → ***Reservation list*** → ✉ (New) → ***Manual*** → ***Program*** → Enter program name

Setting TV Alarm

● → ***TV*** → ***Settings*** → ***TV alarm***

■ **To Set Alarm**

Alarm → ***On*** or ***Off***

■ **To Set Alert Tone**

Alert tone → Select a save location → Select a file

■ **To Set Volume**

Volume → ◙ to adjust volume → ● (Select)

■ **To Set Vibration**

Vibration → Select an item

- While selecting a Vibration pattern, press ✉ (Play) to check the pattern.

■ **To Set Light**

Light → ***On*** or ***Off***

■ **To Set Reminder Time**

Reminder time → Select an item

■ **To Set Duration**

Duration → Select an item

■ **To Set Manner Mode Setting**

Manner mode setting → ***Alarm sound***/***Vibration*** → ***On*** or ***Off***

- Alternatively, in TV window, press Y! → ***Settings*** → ***TV alarm***.

Editing Reservations

● → ***TV*** → ***Reservation list*** → Highlight a reservation → Y! → ***Edit*** → (➲P.6-8 Manual Timer Settings ❸)

Viewing Memory Remaining

● → ***TV*** → ***Reservation list*** → Y! → ***Memory remaining*** → ***Phone***/***Memory card***

Deleting Reservations

● → ***TV*** → ***Reservation list***

■ **To Delete a Reservation**

Highlight a reservation → Y! (Delete) → ***Selected*** → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete Multiple Reservations**

Y! (Delete) → ***Multiple*** → Check reservations → ✉ (Delete) → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete All Reservations**

Y! (Delete) → ***All*** → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → ***Yes***

Memo

Camera & Imaging

7

Capturing Image, Recording Video & Editing 7-2

Camera 7-3
- Using Display as Viewfinder 7-3
- Single Shot 7-5
- Normal 7-6
- Scene 7-6
- Multi Shot 7-6
- Photo Combination 7-7
- Panorama Shot 7-7
- Viewing Captured Images (Quick Play) 7-8

Video 7-9
- Using Display as Viewfinder 7-9
- Recording Video 7-10
- Video Mode 7-11
- Viewing Recorded Video (Quick Play) 7-11

Editing Still Images 7-11

Photo Library 7-12
- Photo Album 7-12
- Creating Flash® 7-12

Advanced Settings 7-13
- Capturing Still Images/Recording Video 7-13
- Capturing Still Images 7-13
- Recording Videos 7-14
- Quick Play 7-14
- Photo Library 7-15

Capturing Image, Recording Video & Editing

Use handset camera to capture images and record movies.

Capturing Images & Recording Video Clips

Select Scene, Multi Shot, etc. to capture image/video (➔P.7-3).
Record up to an hour per clip (➔P.7-9).

Editing Images

Editing images, etc. (➔P.7-11).

Variety of Capturing Mode

Choose applicable mode; Multi shot, Scene, Panorama shot etc., according to conditions (➔P.7-3).

Creating Flash®

Use Still Image in Data Folder to create Flash® (➔P.7-12).

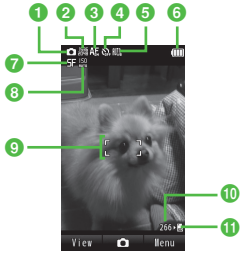
Note

- **Use a dry soft cloth to remove debris from camera lens cover.**
- **Avoid camera shake; hold handset steady or put it on something stable place and use Self-timer to prevent objectionable image blur.**
- **Do not expose handset to devices with static electricity when using camera.**
- **Camera employs high precision technology, however, some pixels may seem brighter or darker than others.**
- **Leaving handset in a hot place for an extended period before capturing/saving image may affect image quality.**
- **Exposing lens to direct sunlight may affect image color.**
- **When battery is low, camera may be unavailable.**

Camera

For capturing still images, select Shooting mode: ***Normal*** to shoot single image and ***Multi shot*** or ***Photo combi*** to shoot multi-shot.
Captured images are saved to Pictures. Insert Memory Card to save images to Digital camera.

Using Display as Viewfinder



Still Image Viewfinder

1 Shooting mode

- : Normal
- : Scene
- : Multi shot
- : Photo combi
- : Panorama shot

Scene

- : Auto[1]
- : Portrait[1]
- : Landscape[1]
- : Sports[1]
- : Night[1]
- : Sunset[1]

Number of capture

- : 6/9 Images (six images)[1]
- : 6/9 Images (nine images)[1]

Speed

- : Speed (Fast)[2]
- : Speed (Normal)[2]
- : Speed (Slow)[2]
- : Speed (Manual)[2]

2 Size (the size varies for Panorama shot)

- : 3.1 M (1536x2048)[3]
- : Wide 2.4 M (1232x2048)[3]
- : 2 M (1200x1600)[3]
- : Wide 1.5 M (960x1600)[3]
- : Wide 1.0 M (768x1280)[3]
- : 0.3 M (480x640)[3]
- : Wallpaper (240x400)
- : Mail (240x320)

3 Focus

- : AF On
- : Macro
- : AF Off

4 Timer

- : Off
- : 3 sec.
- : 5 sec.
- : 10 sec.

5 White balance

- : Auto
- : Daylight
- : Incandescent
- : Fluorescent
- : Cloudy

6 Battery level

7 Quality

- : Superfine
- : Fine
- : Normal

8	ISO ISO AUTO : Auto ISO 100 : 100 ISO 200 : 200 ISO 400 : 400
9	Focus frame : Matrix : Center-weight : Spot
10	Number of remaining available shots
11	Save to : Phone or Always ask : Memory Card prior or Digital camera prior

[1]Shown between shooting mode and shooting size.

[2]Shown between Size and Focus.

[3]Only when the shooting mode is set to ***Normal*** or ***Scene***.

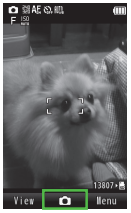
- Pressing [CLR] shows or hides icons and current settings.

Shooting Mode	Description
Normal	Capture still image and select size for purpose; attach images to S! Mail, save as Wallpaper, etc.
Scene	Suitable for capturing still images of night scenes and landscapes.
Multi shot	Press shutter once to capture six or nine sequential images.
Photo combi	Capture sequential images manually. Select Frame to automatically combine the images into one image.
Panorama shot	Ideal for landscapes. Capture up to six images to automatically composite them into a single panoramic image.

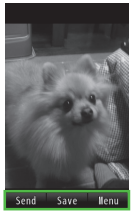
Single Shot

Press [Y!]

Set Shooting Mode and press [✉](Back)



Press [■] ([📷])



Save automatically or manually depending on ***Auto save*** settings (➔P.14-24)

- Adjusting size and brightness are available for still images.
- Attach captured image to message (➔P.7-13).
- Captured images are saved to Pictures. Insert Memory Card and set save location to Digital Camera folder to save images to Digital camera.
- When ***Focus*** is set to ***AF On***, Auto Focus is available; subject in the center of AF frame is automatically focused on (white). Press [■] ([📷]) to focus on. Frame turns green when image is in focus.

Normal

1 ■ → *Camera* → *Camera*

- Adjust settings before capturing as required (➔P.7-13).

2 **Frame image in Viewfinder**

- Use [ ] / [ ] / [ ] to zoom in/out.
- Use [ ] to adjust brightness.

3 ■ ([ ])

- When ***Focus*** is set to ***AF On***, a subject is automatically focused on.
- Images are saved automatically.
- Set ***Auto save*** to ***Off*** to save manually (➔P.14-21).

Scene

1 ■ → *Camera* → *Camera*

2 [ ] → *Scene*

3 *Scene* → **Select a scene** → [ ] **(Back)**

- Adjust settings before capturing as required (➔P.7-13).
- Macro, ISO, Exposure metering and Effect are not available for Scene.
- To close the menu, press [ ] (Back).

4 **Frame image in Viewfinder**

- Use [ ] / [ ] / [ ] to zoom in/out.
- Use [ ] to adjust brightness.

5 ■ ([ ])

- When ***Focus*** is set to ***AF On***, a subject is automatically focused on.
- Images are saved automatically.
- Set ***Auto save*** to ***Off*** to save manually (➔P.14-21).

Multi Shot

1 ■ → *Camera* → *Camera*

2 [ ] → *Multi shot*

3 *Number of capture* → **Select image count**

4 *Speed* → *Fast*, *Normal*, *Slow* **or** *Manual* → [ ] **(Back)**

- Adjust settings before capturing as required (➔P.7-13).
- Face Link is not available for Multi shot.
- To close the menu, press [ ] (Back).

5 **Frame image in Viewfinder**

- Use [ ] / [ ] / [ ] to zoom in/out.
- Use [ ] to adjust brightness.

6 ■ ([ ])

- Images are saved automatically when capturing of images is over.
- Set ***Auto save*** to ***Off*** to save manually (➔P.14-21).
- If ***Speed*** is set to ***Manual***, repeat 6. Press [ ] (Stop) and save the images. To redo, press [CLEAR].

- When ***Auto save*** is ***Off***, all images captured using Multi shot appear. After 6, select images to save → Press [ ] (Save).

Photo Combination

1. ■ → *Camera* → *Camera*
2. Y! → *Photo combi*
3. *Style* → **Select a style**
   - Adjust settings before capturing as required (➔P.7-13).
   - Face Link is not available for Photo Combination.
   - To close the menu, press ✉ (Back).
4. **Frame image in Viewfinder → Apply selected frame and press ■ ( )**
   - Use 🔍 / ↑ / ↓ to zoom in/out.
   - Use ☀ to adjust brightness.
5. **Repeat 4 to capture images**
   - To redo, press C.CLEAR.
   - Images are saved automatically when capturing images ends.
   - Set ***Auto save*** to ***Off*** to save manually (➔P.14-21).

Panorama Shot

1. ■ → *Camera* → *Camera*
2. Y! → *Panorama shot*
   - Viewfinder appears in Landscape.
   - Adjust settings before capturing as required (➔P.7-13).
   - Face Link is not available for Panorama shot.
   - To close the menu, press ✉ (Back).
3. **Frame image in Viewfinder**
   - Use 🔍 / ↑ / ↓ to zoom in/out in Landscape view.
   - Use ☀ to adjust brightness in Landscape view
4. ■ ( )
5. **Move handset to capture an image (vertically or horizontally) → Adjust small white border inside big black border to automatically capture image**
6. **Repeat 5 to capture range**
   - To create panorama image while capturing images, press ✉ (Stop).
   - To redo, press C.CLEAR.
   - Alternatively, capturing six images automatically ends capturing.
   - Set ***Auto save*** to ***Off*** to save manually (➔P.14-21).
   - Panorama images are created and saved automatically. Depending on the number of images to be captured, processing may take time.

- Move handset slowly to capture panoramic image.
- Panorama is ideal for capturing landscapes. Stand at least ten meters from subject. If too close panoramic image creation may fail.
- Low light or high contrast may hinder panoramic image creation.

Viewing Captured Images (Quick Play)

1 ■ → *Camera* → *Camera* → ✉ **(View)**

2 ◙ **to view Image**

- With Memory Card inserted, ***Memory card prior*** or ***Digital camera prior*** is selectable.
- Saved media files are shown. Edit save location settings to switch between Phone/Memory Card (➔P.14-21).
- Alternatively, open still image from Data Folder (➔P.12-3).

Advanced

Advanced Settings (☞P.7-13

- Setting Captured Still Image as Wallpaper etc.
- Playing Quick Play Image Slide Show

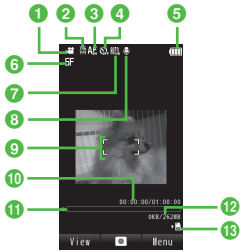
Settings

- Select Quality (☞P.14-20)
- Set ISO (☞P.14-20)
- Set Exposure Metering (☞P.14-20)
- Select Effect (☞P.14-20)
- Activate/Cancel Auto Save (☞P.14-21)
- Set Save Location When Memory Card is Inserted (☞P.14-21)
- Show/Hide Guideline (☞P.14-21)
- Set Face Link Display (☞P.14-21)
- Set Shutter Sound (☞P.14-21)
- Set Timer Sound (☞P.14-21)

Video

Record clips easily. Files are saved in 3GP format to Video folder in Data Folder. When recording a video to attach or insert into an S! Mail, set Shooting size to ***S! Mail*** (➔P.7-13).

Using Display as Viewfinder



Video Viewfinder

1	Mode : Video
2	Size : QVGA (320×240)* : QCIF (176×144) : SQCIF (128×96) : S! Mail (176×144) : S! Mail (128×96)
3	Focus : AF On : Macro : AF Off
4	Timer : Off : 3 sec. : 5 sec. : 10 sec.
5	Battery level
6	Quality : Superfine : Fine : Normal
7	White balance : Auto : Daylight : Incandescent : Fluorescent : Cloudy
8	Sound : On : Off
9	Focus frame
10	Elapsed recording time/Available recording time • If Size is set to ***S! Mail***, only the elapsed recording time appears.
11	Progress bar
12	Expected video size/Available memory at the time you started the shooting • If Size is set to ***S! Mail***, the shooting data size/available shooting size appear.
13	Save to : Phone : Memory Card prior

***Only for Landscape view**

- Pressing shows or hides icons/the current settings.
- If recorded video size is too big or memory is insufficient, recording ends before maximum recording time is reached.

Shooting Mode	Description
Video	Record video suitable for attaching to S! Mail or saving to handset.

Recording Video

Press [Y!]

Set Shooting Mode and press [✉](Back)

Press [■] ([●])

Save automatically or manually depending on ***Auto save*** settings (➔P.14-24)

- Adjusting size and brightness are available for video.
- Attach recorded video to message (➔P.7-13).
- When ***Focus*** is set to ***AF On***, Auto Focus is available; automatically focusing a subject at the center of AF frame (white) (the focus is locked while recording a video).
- If video file is encoded beyond 15 FPS, it may not be played properly.

Video Mode

Record up to an hour for one clip.

1 ■ → ***Camera*** → ***Video camera***

- Adjust settings before capturing as required (➔P.7-14).

2 **Frame image in Viewfinder**

- Use ▲ / ▼ / ▼ to zoom in/out.
- Use ◘ to adjust brightness.

3 ■ (■)

- To pause while recording, press ✉ (Pause). To resume the recording, press ✉ (Resume).

4 ■ **(Stop)**

- When ***Focus*** is set to ***AF On***, a subject is automatically focused on.
- Video is saved automatically. When recordable time has elapsed, recording automatically ends.
- Set ***Auto save*** to ***Off*** to save manually (➔P.14-21).

Viewing Recorded Video (Quick Play)

1 ■ → ***Camera*** → ***Video camera*** → ✉ **(View)**

2 ◘ **to highlight video** → ■ **(Play)**

- Alternatively, check video from Data Folder (➔P.12-3).

Advanced

Advanced Settings ☞P.7-14

- Using Recorded Video as Ringtone

Settings

- Select Quality (☞P.14-21)
- Set Effect (☞P.14-21)
- Set Sound Recording (☞P.14-21)
- Activate/Cancel Auto Save (☞P.14-21)
- Set Save Location (☞P.14-21)
- Show/Hide Guideline (☞P.14-21)
- Set Shutter Sound (☞P.14-21)
- Set Timer Sound (☞P.14-21)

Editing Still Images

Set image brightness, size and effect.

1 ■ → ***Data Folder*** → **Select a folder**

2 **Select a file**

- If confirmation appears, select ***OK***.

3 Y! → ***Edit*** → ***Image editor***

4 **Edit image**

■ **To Set Effects on Image**

Y! → ***Effect*** → ***Filter***, ***Style*** or ***Warp*** → Select an effect → Select preview image → ■ (OK)

- For some effects, adjust the effect level.

■ **To Adjust an Image Automatically**

Y! → ***Adjust*** → ***Auto level***

■ **To Adjust an Image**

Y! → ***Adjust*** → ***Brightness***, ***Contrast*** or ***Color*** → Adjust image → ■ (OK)

■ **To Resize an Image**

Y! → ***Transform*** → ***Resize*** → Select a size

- After selecting ***Customize***, enter ***Width*** and ***Height***, press ■ (OK).

■ **To Rotate an Image**

Y! → ***Transform*** → ***Rotate*** → ✉ (↶) / Y! (↷) → ■ (OK)

■ **To Flip an Image**

Y! → ***Transform*** → ***Flip*** → ✉ (⏮) / Y! (⏭) → ■ (OK)

■ **To Crop an Image**
[Y!] → ***Transform*** → ***Crop*** → [✥] to move crop frame to the position → [✉] (Size) → [✥] to adjust its size → [■] (OK)

- To undo, press [✉] (Undo).

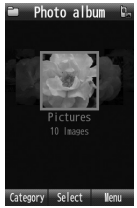
5 [■] **(Save) → *Yes* → Enter file name**

Photo Library

Photo Album

View JPEG still images in handset or Memory Card.

1 [■] → ***Camera*** → ***Photo album***



2 **Select a folder**

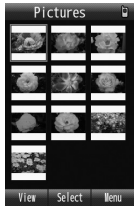
3 [📷] **to view file**

- Some files may not appear.
- Press [■] (Zoom) to enlarge image. To go back to normal view, press [■] (OK) / [CLEAR].

Creating Flash®

Use a still image in Data Folder to create Flash® image. Attach created Flash® image to sent via message.

1 [■] → ***Camera*** → ***Dynamic effect***



- With Memory Card inserted, select a file from Pictures or Digital camera folder.

2 **Select file → Create Flash®**

■ **To Add Frame to Image**
[Frame] (Frame) → Select frame type → Select a frame (→ [✉] (Done) / [■] (OK))

■ **To Add Icon to Image**
[Icon] (Icon) → (to add icon, [Y!] → ***Insert*** →) Select icon → Adjust the position → [■] (OK)

■ **To Add Balloon to Image**
[Balloon] (Balloon) → (to add balloon, [Y!] → ***Insert*** →) ***Template***/***Preset*** → Select balloon → Adjust the position (if ***Template*** is selected, enter text → Adjust the position) → [■] (OK)

■ **To Restore Currently Edited Image**
(Reset) → ***Yes***

3 (Save) → Enter name

- To delete frame added to image, select a file → (Frame) → ***None***.
- To delete icon, select file → Select (Icon) → → ***Delete*** → Use to highlight icon → (Delete).
- To delete balloon, select file → Select (Balloon) → → ***Delete*** → Use to highlight icon → (Delete).
- To create Flash® using an image in Data Folder, highlight an image → → ***Edit*** → ***Dynamic effect*** and perform the same operations.

Advanced

Advanced Settings ☞P.7-15

- Switching Folder
- Setting Opened Still Image as Wallpaper, etc.
- Sending Opened Still Image
- Editing Opened Still Image
- Saving Tag Information
- Deleting Opened File

Advanced Settings

Capturing Still Images/Recording Video

Setting Capture Method

In Viewfinder,

■ **To Set Capturing Size**
Size → Select item

■ **To Set Macro**
Focus → ***Macro***

■ **To Set Time**
Timer → Select item

■ **To Set White Balance**
White balance → Select item

■ **To Set Effect (Color Tone)**
Settings → ***Effect*** → Select item

■ **To Set Sound Recording**
Settings → ***Sound recording*** → ***On*** or ***Off***

- Recording setting is only for Video.

Sending Captured Still Images/Recorded Video

After capturing, (Send)

- For video, after recording, → ***Send***.
- To operate above, set ***Auto save*** to ***Off*** or ***On (Preview manual)*** (➲P.14-21).

■ **To Send via Message**
Via message → (➲P.4-4 S! Mail ❷)

■ **To Send via Infrared**
Via infrared (➲P.13-3)

Capturing Still Images

Setting Captured Still Image as Wallpaper etc.

After capturing still image, → ***Set as***

- To operate above, set ***Auto save*** to ***Off*** or ***On (Preview manual)*** (➲P.14-21).

■ **To Set Image to Wallpaper**
Wallpaper → Operate the following as required:
(Rotate) several time to adjust directions
Or
/ to adjust size → (Set)

■ **To Set Image to Incoming Image**
Caller ID → Search and select Phone Book entry (➲P.2-14) → (Set)

■ **To Set Image to Alternative Picture**
Still image → (Set)

Editing Face Link

After capturing still image, → ***Edit face link*** → Search and select entry (➲P.2-14)

- Before capturing, set ***Face link display*** to ***On***.

Recording Videos

Viewing Recorded Video before Saving

After recording video, ✉ (Play)

- To operate the above, set ***Auto save*** to ***Off*** (➔P.14-21).

Using Recorded Video as Ringtone

After recording video, Y! → ***Set as***

- To operate the above, set ***Auto save*** to ***Off*** (➔P.14-21).

■ **To Set Video to Voice Ringtone**

Voice ringtone

■ **To Set Video to Video Ringtone**

Video ringtone

■ **To Set Video to Caller Ringtone**

Caller ringtone → Search and select Phone Book entry (➔P.2-14)

Quick Play

Editing/Sending Still image

● → ***Camera*** → ***Camera*** → ✉ (View) → 📷 to view still image

■ **To Send Still Image**

✉ (Send)

- To Send via Message

  Via message → (➔P.4-4 S! Mail 2)
- To Send via Infrared

  Via infrared (➔P.13-3)

■ **To Use Quick Play Still Image as Wallpaper, etc.**

Y! → ***Set as***

- To Set Image as Wallpaper

  Wallpaper → Operate the following as required: ✉ (Rotate) several time to adjust directions

  Or

  📱 / 📱 to adjust size → ● (Set)
- To Set Image as Incoming Image

  Caller ID → Search and select Phone Book entry (➔P.2-14) → ● (Set)
- To Set Image as Alternative Picture

  Still image → ● (Set)

■ **To Edit Still Image**

Y! → ***Edit*** → ***Image editor*** → (➔P.7-11 Editing Still Images 4)

■ **To View Still Image Details**

Y! → ***Details***

■ **To Delete Still Image**

Highlight image → Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Yes***

Editing/Setting/Sending Video

● → ***Camera*** → ***Video camera*** → ✉ (View) → 📷 to view video

■ **To Send Video**

Y! → ***Send***

- To Send via Message

  Via message → (➔P.4-4 S! Mail 2)
- To Send via Infrared

  Via infrared (➔P.13-3)

■ **To Set Video as Ringtone**

Y! → ***Set as***

- To Set Video as Voice Ringtone

  Voice ringtone
- To Set Video as Video Ringtone

  Video ringtone
- To Set Video as Caller Ringtone

  Caller ringtone → Search and select Phone Book entry (➔P.2-14)

■ **To View Video Details**

Y! → ***Details***

■ **To Delete Video**

- To Delete a Image

  Highlight video → Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Selected*** → ***Yes***

- To Delete Multiple Images
  Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Multiple*** → Check videos → ✉ (Delete) → ***Yes***
- To Delete All Images
  Y! → ***Delete*** → ***All*** → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → ***Yes***

Playing Quick Play Image Slide Show

● → ***Camera*** → ***Camera*** → ✉ (View) → Y! → ***Slide show***

- Press ● (Pause) during playback to pause Slide show. Press ● (Restart) to replay Slide show.
- Press ✉ (Stop) to cancel Slide show.

Exiting Quick Play

CLEAR during Quick Play

Photo Library

Changing Still Image Display

● → ***Camera*** → ***Photo album*** → ✉ (Category) → ***Folder***/***Month***/***Date***/***Tags***/***Faces***

Switching Folder

● → ***Camera*** → ***Photo album*** → Y! → ***Memory switch*** → ***Phone+Memory card***/***Phone***/***Memory card***/***Digital camera***

- When Memory Card inserted, ***Phone+Memory card***/***Phone***/***Memory card*** are selectable.

Setting Opened Still Image as Wallpaper, etc.

● → ***Camera*** → ***Photo album*** → Select a file location → Select a file → Y! → ***Set as***

■ **To Set Image to Wallpaper**
Wallpaper → Operate the following as required: ✉ (Rotate) several times as required to adjust directions
Or
↑ / ↓ to adjust size → ● (Set)

■ **To Set Image to Incoming Image**
Caller ID → Search and select Phone Book entry (➡P.2-14) → ● (Set)

■ **To Set Image to Alternative Picture**
Still image → ● (Set)

Sending Opened Still Image

● → ***Camera*** → ***Photo album*** → Select a file location → 📷 to view image → ✉ (Send)

■ **To Send via Message**
Via message → (➡P.4-4 S! Mail 2)

■ **To Send via Infrared**
Via infrared (➡P.13-3)

Editing Opened Still Image

● → ***Camera*** → ***Photo album*** → Select a file location → 📷 to view image → Y! → ***Edit*** → ***Image editor*** → (➡P.7-11 Editing Still Images 4)

Saving Tag Information

● → ***Camera*** → ***Photo album*** → Select file location → 📷 to view image → Y! → ***Manage tags***

■ **To Save Existent Tag**
Select tag

■ **To Save New Tag**
✉ (New) → Enter tag name → ● (OK) → Select new tag

Deleting Opened File

● → ***Camera*** → ***Photo album*** → 📷 to view image → Select a file → Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Yes***

Adding Icon after Adjusting

● → ***Camera*** → ***Dynamic effect*** → Select file → (Icon) → Select icon → Y!

■ **To Zoom in/out**

Zoom → to adjust size → ● (OK) → Adjust position → ● (OK)

■ **To Rotate Icon**

Rotate → to adjust angle → ● (OK) → Adjust position → ● (OK)

■ **To Reverse Icon**

Reverse → → ● (OK) → Adjust position → ● (OK)

■ **To Transparentize Icon**

Transparency → to adjust transparency → ● (OK) → Adjust position → ● (OK)

Editing Text on Balloon

● → ***Camera*** → ***Dynamic effect*** → Select file → (Balloon) → ***Template*** → Enter text → Y!

■ **To Change Text Size**

Font size → to adjust size → ● (OK) → Adjust position → ● (OK)

■ **To Change Text Color**

Font color → to highlight text color → ● (OK) → Adjust position → ● (OK)

■ **To Assign Motion**

Action text → to highlight action → ● (OK) → Adjust position → ● (OK)

■ **To Reserve Balloon**

Reverse → → ● (OK) → Adjust position → ● (OK)

■ **To Edit Text**

Edit text → Edit text → ● (OK) → Adjust position → ● (OK)

Editing Placed Icon

Place icon (P.7-12) → (Icon) → to highlight icon → ● (Edit)

■ **To Adjust Position**

Adjust position → Adjust position → ● (OK) → (Done)

■ **To Zoom in/out**

Zoom → to adjust size → ● (OK) → (Done)

■ **To Rotate Icon**

Rotate → to adjust direction → ● (OK) → (Done)

■ **To Reverse Icon**

Reverse → → ● (OK) → (Done)

■ **To Transparentize Icon**

Transparency → to adjust transparency → ● (OK) → (Done)

Editing Placed Balloon

Place balloon (P.7-12) → (Balloon) → to highlight Balloon → ● (Edit)

■ **To Edit Text**

Edit text → Edit text → (Done)

■ **To Change Balloon Type**

Balloon type → Select Balloon → (Done)

■ **To Adjust Position**

Adjust position → To adjust position → ● (OK) → (Done)

■ **To Change Text size**

Font size → to adjust size → ● (OK) → (Done)

■ **To Change Text Color**

Font color → to highlight text color → ● (OK) → (Done)

■ **To Assign Motion**

Action text → to highlight action → ● (OK) → (Done)

■ **To Reserve Balloon**

Reverse → → ● (OK) → (Done)

Previewing Flash®

In Create Flash® window, Y! (Preview)

Media Player

8

Using Media Player **8-2**

Downloading Media Files **8-3**
- Downloading Music & Movies 8-3
- Saving Media Files to Phone/Memory Card 8-3

Playing Music **8-3**
- Media Player Music Window 8-4
- Playing Music 8-4

Playing Movie **8-5**
- Media Player Movie Window 8-6
- Playing Movie 8-7

Using Playlist **8-8**
- Creating Playlist 8-8
- Playing Playlist 8-8

Streaming **8-8**
- Streaming from Page Link 8-8
- Entering URL 8-9
- Accessing from Bookmark 8-9
- Accessing from History 8-9

Advanced Settings **8-9**
- Music Playback 8-9
- Movie Playback 8-10
- Playlist 8-11
- Streaming 8-11

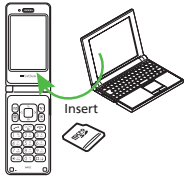
Using Media Player

This handset features a Media Player.
Download media files via Yahoo! Keitai or create personal playlists.

Playing Media Files

Play music or movies via Media Player (➔P.8-4, P.8-7). Select a music or movie file from folders or playlists.

Saving Music/Movie from PC to Memory Card



Insert Memory Card with music or movies on it that was saved on PC into the handset (➔P.8-3).

Downloading Media Files

Access Yahoo! Keitai to download music or movies. Download movie content or play it back in Streaming (➔P.8-3).

Creating Playlists

Add your favorite music or movies to a playlist and create your own music or movie album (➔P.8-8).

Downloading Media Files

Access Yahoo! Keitai to download music or movies and copy them to handset.

Note

• Downloading music or movies may incur high Packet Communication charges since they contain a large volume of data.

Downloading Music & Movies

1 ▣ → ***Media***

2 Download music or movie

■ **To Download Music**
Music → All music → Download Music

■ **To Download Movie**
Movie → All movies → Download Movies

Saving Media Files to Phone/Memory Card

To convert music or movie file formats, software is required.

- SoftBank Mobile does not guarantee proper operation with any specific software.
- For software specifications or operations, see SoftBank Mobile Website.

1 Insert Memory Card into handset

- Follow instructions (➲P.12-8).

- Save files to the following folders by type:
  Music file: PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Music
  PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Sounds & Ringtones
  Movie file: PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Movie
- After saving files, insert Memory Card into handset and load saved files to play the files.

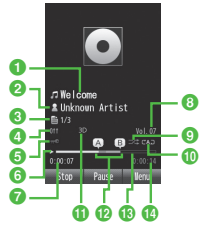
Playing Music

Folder structure is as follows.

Folder	Description
Last played/Now playing	Last played or currently played file
All music	Up to 9999 music files
Playlists	View playable file in Music in created folders
Artists	All music files by Artist
Albums	All music files by Album
Genres	All music files by Genre
Folders	All music files in Ring songs・tones and Music folders of Data Folder
Recent music	100 most recently played files (most recent first)
Most played music	100 most frequently played files (most frequent first)

- Files on Memory Card may take longer to load.
- Only the files, which can be played with ***Music***, appear.

Media Player Music Window



Music Playback

1. Title (file name when title is unknown)
2. Artist's name
3. File number/Total number of files
4. Equalizer
5. Copyright protection
6. Playing status: Play/Pause/Stop
7. Elapsed playing time
8. Volume level
9. Shuffle
10. Repeat mode
    - A : Off
    - 1 : Repeat one
    - A : Repeat all
11. 3D sound
12. Repeat section
13. Progress bar
14. Total playing time

Shortcut Key Operations

Press shortcut assigned key to perform the operation. Available operations vary according to playing status and file type.

Key	Description
●	Play/Pause
▶	Next song
◀	Previous song/Beginning of current song
● / ▲	Volume up
● / ▼	Volume down
✉	Stop
Y!	Menu
1	Repeat pattern setting
2 ABC	Shuffle
3 DEF	Equalizer
4 GHI	Time search
5 JKL	Repeat section

- May not play properly depending on the music file or the environment.

Playing Music

1. ● → *Media* → *Music*
2. Play a file

■ **To Play Most Recently Played File**
Last played
- While playing, ***Last played*** will be ***Now playing***.

■ **To Select from All Files**
All music → Select a file

■ **To Select from Playlists**
Playlists → Select a playlist → Select a file

■ **To Select from Artists List**
Artists → Select an Artist → Select a file

■ **To Select from Albums List**
Albums → Select an Album → Select a file

■ **To Select from Genres list**
Genres → Select a genre → Select a file

■ **To Select from Folder List**
Folders → Select a folder → Select a file

■ **To Select from Recent Music List**
Recent music → Select a file

■ **To Select from Most Played Music List**
Most played music → Select a file

- When Memory Card is inserted, Memory Card files appear in ***All music*** and ***Folders*** with .
- While Media Player is active, press CLEAR repeatedly to hide Music playback window. Also, press to choose whether to exit Music playback window or keep playing the music as BGM.
  In Standby, press to end Media Player. End confirmation appears, choose ***Yes***.
- If a call arrives while playing music in Music playback window, playback pauses and handset rings. After call ends, paused Music playback window returns.
  For BGM, playback resumes automatically after call ends.
- When the alarm is activated while music is being played in Music playback window, playback pauses, Alarm sounds and indicator appears. Press any key to stop Alarm and to clear the indicator.
  For BGM, playback resumes.

Advanced

Advanced Settings ☞P.8-9

- Searching File by Text
- Sending Files
- Sorting Files
- Purchasing/Downloading Content Key
- Viewing File Details
- Playing from Specified Point
- Viewing Lyrics
- Connecting Web Link
- Checking Shortcut Key Assignments

Settings

- Set Repeat Mode (☞P.14-22)
- Set Shuffle (☞P.14-22)
- Set Equalizer (☞P.14-22)
- Set 3D Sound (☞P.14-22)

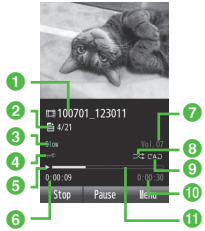
Playing Movie

Folder structure is as follows.

Folder	Description
Last played	Play most recently played file
All movies	View all playable file in Movie up to 9999
Playlists	View playable file in Movie in created folders
Folders	View files in Movie folders of Data Folder
Recent movies	View up to 100 most recently played file (most recently played file appears first)
Most played movies	View up to 100 most frequently played file (most frequently played file appears first)

- Files on Memory Card may take longer to load.
- Only the files, which can be played with ***Movie***, appear.

Media Player Movie Window



Movie Playback

Movie Playback

1. Video title (or file name when title is unknown) and artist's name
2. File number/Total number of files
3. Playback speed
4. Copyright protection
5. Playing status: Play/Pause/Stop
6. Elapsed playing time
7. Volume level
8. Shuffle
9. Repeat mode
   - A : Off
   - 1 : Repeat one
   - A : Repeat all
10. Total playing time
11. Progress bar

Shortcut Key Operations

Press shortcut assigned key to perform the operation. Available operations vary according to playing status and file type.

Normal Screen Display (Portrait)

Key	Description
■	Play/Pause
▶▮	Next clip
▮◀	Previous movie/Beginning of current movie
Vol / Vol	Volume up
Vol / Vol	Volume down
✉	Stop
Y!	Menu
⊡	Fullscreen view
1	Repeat pattern setting
2	Shuffle
3	Switch Display size
4	Time search
5	Capture frame
6	Playback speed

Fullscreen View (Landscape)

Key	Description
■	Play/Pause
▣ / ▲	Volume up
▣ / ▼	Volume down
▣	Next movie
▣	Previous movie/Beginning of current movie
▣	Standard view
1	Repeat pattern setting
2	Shuffle
5	Screen capture
6	Playback speed

Playing Movie

1 ■ → ***Media*** → ***Movie***

2 **Play a file**

- **To Play Most Recently Played File**
  Last played
- **To Select from All Files**
  All movies → Select a file
- **To Select from Playlists**
  Playlists → Select a playlist → Select a file
- **To Select from Folder List**
  Folders → Select a folder
- **To Select from Recent Movie List**
  Recent movies → Select a file
- **To Select from Most Played Movie List**
  Most played movies → Select a file

- Highlight ***All movies*** → press ✉ (Play) to play all the appropriate files in list.
- When Memory Card is inserted, Memory Card files appear in ***All movies*** and ***Folders*** with .
- In ***All movie***/***Folder***, highlight file to show preview.

Advanced

Advanced Settings ☞P.8-10

- Searching File by Text
- Sending Files
- Sorting Files
- Purchasing/Downloading Content Key
- Viewing File Details
- Viewing Movie in Fullscreen
- Changing Window Size
- Playing from Specified Point
- Capturing Still Image from Movie
- Connecting to Web Link
- Changing Playback Speed
- Checking Shortcut Key Assignments

Settings

- Set Repeat Mode (☞P.14-22)
- Set Shuffle (☞P.14-22)
- Set Backlight (☞P.14-22)
- Set Portrait Style (☞P.14-22)
- Set Display for Activating Movie (☞P.14-22)
- Show/Hide Movie Preview (☞P.14-22)
- Access/Ignore Linked Information (☞P.14-22)

Using Playlist

Create Playlist to make your own album.

Creating Playlist

Create up to 20 playlists with 100 files in each playlist.

1. ■ → *Media* → *Music* or *Movie* → *Playlists* → ✉ (New)
2. Enter playlist name
3. Select created playlist
4. ✉ (Add)
5. Check files to save → ✉ (Add)

Playing Playlist

1. ■ → *Media* → *Music* or *Movie* → *Playlists*
2. Select a playlist
3. Select a file

- Playlist cannot be played if a saved file has been deleted, or if file was added from Memory Card and Memory Card was removed. Insert Memory Card and load file to play.

Advanced

Advanced Settings ☞P.8-11

- Adding Files to Playlist
- Removing Files from Playlist
- Changing Order of Files in Playlist
- Renaming Playlist
- Deleting Playlist

Streaming

Enjoy audio visual media while it is being downloaded. Access compatible files via page links, etc.

Note

- **Even if streaming is paused, Internet connection remains active, incurring Packet Communication charges.**

Streaming from Page Link

1. Open a page containing a page link
2. Select a link

Streaming

- Play/Stop operation while streaming is the same as that of Media Player (➲P.8-4, P.8-6).

Entering URL

1 ▣ → *Media* → *Streaming* → *Enter URL*

- Default: "rtsp://" is set.

2 **Enter URL**

Accessing from Bookmark

Save up to 20 links in Streaming Bookmark.

1 ▣ → *Media* → *Streaming* → *Bookmark*

2 **Select a bookmark**

Accessing from History

Hold 20 previously accessed links.

1 ▣ → *Media* → *Streaming* → *History*

2 **Select history**

Advanced

Advanced Settings ☞P.8-11

- Changing Display Size
- Playing from Specified Point
- Saving File to Bookmark while Streaming
- Accessing Streaming Saved as Bookmark
- Accessing Previously Accessed Stream
- Saving Streaming Bookmark via Direct Entry
- Deleting Streaming Bookmark URL

Advanced Settings

Music Playback

Setting Files to Ringtone in Normal Mode

▣ → *Media* → *Music* → *All music* → Highlight a file → ✉ (Set as) → Select an item

- This operation is not available for files that cannot be added to Ringtone.

Searching File by Text

▣ → *Media* → *Music* → *All music* → Y! → *Search files* → Check *Title* or *Artist* → Select Search field → Enter title or artist name → ✉ (Search)

Sending Files

▣ → *Media* → *Music* → *All music* → Highlight a file → Y! → *Send*

■ **To Send via Message**

Via message → (➔P.4-4 S! Mail 2)

■ **To Send via Infrared**

Via infrared → Check files → ✉ (Send) (➔P.13-3)

Sorting Files

▣ → *Media* → *Music* → *All music* → Y! → *Sort by* → Select an item

- Perform the same operation on files in *Folder*.
- While loading files from Memory Card, the order of music files may not be changed. Perform the same operation again.

Purchasing/Downloading Content Key

■ → ***Media*** → ***Music*** → ***All music*** → Highlight a file → Y! → ***Download Content key***

Viewing File Details

■ → ***Media*** → ***Music*** → ***All music*** → Highlight a file → Y! → ***Details***

- Alternatively, during playback, press Y! → ***Details***.
- Perform the same operation in other folders.

Playing from Specified Point

In Music playback window, Y! → ***Time search*** → Enter duration → ■ (Jump)

Viewing Lyrics

In Music playback window, Y! → ***View lyrics***

- This is not available when music file is compatible with this function.

Connecting Web Link

In Music playback window, Y! → ***Connect web link*** → ***Yes***

- This is not available when web link does not exist.

Checking Shortcut Key Assignments

In Music playback window, Y! → ***Help***

Movie Playback

Setting Files to Ringtone in Normal Mode

■ → ***Media*** → ***Movie*** → ***All movies*** → Highlight a file → ✉ (Set as)

- This operation is not available for files that cannot be added to Ringtone.

Searching File by Text

■ → ***Media*** → ***Movie*** → ***All movies*** → Y! → ***Search files*** → Check ***Title*** or ***Author*** → Select Search field → Enter title or author's name → ✉ (Search)

Sending Files

■ → ***Media*** → ***Movie*** → ***All movies*** → Highlight a file → Y! → ***Send***

■ To Send via Message

Via message → (➔P.4-4 S! Mail ❷)

■ To Send via Infrared

Via infrared → Check files → ✉ (Send) (➔P.13-3)

Sorting Files

■ → ***Media*** → ***Movie*** → ***All movies*** → Y! → ***Sort by*** → Select an item

- Perform the same operation on files in ***Folder***.

Purchasing/Downloading Content Key

■ → ***Media*** → ***Movie*** → ***All movies*** → Highlight a file → Y! → ***Download Content key***

Viewing File Details

■ → ***Media*** → ***Movie*** → ***All movies*** → Highlight a file → Y! → ***Details***

- Alternatively, in Movie playback window (Landscape view), press Y! → ***Details***.
- Perform the same operation in other folders.

Viewing Movie in Fullscreen

In Movie playback window (Landscape view), Y! → ***Full screen view***

Changing Window Size

In Movie playback window (Landscape view), Y! → ***Resolution*** → Select an item

- To view movie in fullscreen , the file has to be 320 x 192 resolution.

Playing from Specified Point

In Movie playback window (Landscape view), Y! → ***Time search*** → Enter duration → ■ (Jump)

Capturing Still Image from Movie

In Movie playback window (Landscape view), Y! → ***Capture frame***

Connecting to Web Link

In Movie playback window (Landscape view), Y! → ***Connect web link*** → ***Yes***

Changing Playback Speed

In Movie playback window (Landscape view), Y! → ***Playback speed*** → Select an item

- Sound is muted while changing playback speed.

Checking Shortcut Key Assignments

In Movie playback window (Landscape view), [Y!] → ***Help***

Playlist

Adding Files to Playlist

[■] → ***Media*** → ***Music/Movie*** → ***All music/All movies***

■ To Add an Item

Highlight a file → [Y!] → ***Add to playlist*** → ***Selected*** → Select a playlist

■ To Add Multiple Items

[Y!] → ***Add to playlist*** → ***Multiple*** → Check files → [✉] (Add) → Select a playlist

Removing Files from Playlist

[■] → ***Media*** → ***Music/Movie*** → ***Playlists*** → ***Select a playlist***

■ To Remove an Item

Highlight a file → [Y!] → ***Remove*** → ***Selected***

■ To Remove Multiple Items

[Y!] → ***Remove*** → ***Multiple*** → Check files → [✉] (Delete)

■ To Remove All Items

[Y!] → ***Remove*** → ***All*** → ***Yes***

Changing Order of Files in Playlist

[■] → ***Media*** → ***Music/Movie*** → ***Playlists*** → Select a playlist → Highlight a file → [Y!] → ***Change order*** → Highlight a destination with [📱] → [■] (OK)

Renaming Playlist

[■] → ***Media*** → ***Music/Movie*** → ***Playlists*** → Highlight a playlist → [Y!] → ***Rename*** → Enter playlist name

Deleting Playlist

[■] → ***Media*** → ***Music/Movie*** → ***Playlists***

■ To Delete an Item

Highlight a playlist → [Y!] → ***Delete*** → ***Selected*** → ***Yes***

■ To Delete Multiple Items

[Y!] → ***Delete*** → ***Multiple*** → Check playlists → [✉] (Delete) → ***Yes***

■ To Delete All Items

[Y!] → ***Delete*** → ***All*** → ***Yes***

Streaming

Playing the Last Played Stream

[■] → ***Media*** → ***Streaming*** → ***Last played***

Changing Display Size

While streaming, [Y!] → ***Resolution*** → Select an item

Playing from Specified Point

While streaming, [Y!] → ***Time search*** → Enter duration → [■] (Jump)

Saving File to Bookmark while Streaming

While streaming, [Y!] → ***Add bookmark*** → Select Title field → Enter title → Select URL field → Enter URL → [✉] (Save)

Accessing Streaming Saved as Bookmark

While streaming, [Y!] → ***View bookmark*** → Select bookmark

Accessing Previously Accessed Stream

While streaming, [Y!] → ***View history*** → Select history

Editing Streaming Bookmark URL

[■] → ***Media*** → ***Streaming*** → ***Bookmark*** → Highlight a bookmark → [✉] (Edit) → Select Title field → Edit title → Select URL field → Edit URL → [✉] (Save)

- Alternatively, while streaming, press [Y!] → ***View bookmark*** → Highlight a bookmark → [✉] (Edit) → Select Title field → Edit title → Select URL field → Edit URL → [✉] (Save).

Saving Streaming Bookmark via Direct Entry

■ → ***Media*** → ***Streaming*** → ***Bookmark*** → Y! → ***Add bookmark*** → Select Title field → Edit title → Select URL field → Edit URL → ✉ (Save)

- Alternatively, while streaming, press Y! → ***View bookmark*** → Y! → ***Add bookmark*** → Select Title field → Edit title → Select URL field → Edit URL → ✉ (Save).

Deleting Streaming Bookmark URL

■ → ***Media*** → ***Streaming*** → ***Bookmark***

■ To Delete an Item

Highlight a bookmark → Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Selected*** → ***Yes***

■ To Delete Multiple Items

Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Multiple*** → Check bookmarks → ✉ (Delete) → ***Yes***

■ To Delete All Items

Y! → ***Delete*** → ***All*** → ***Yes***

- Alternatively, while streaming, press Y! → ***View bookmark*** → Y! → ***Delete***.

Editing History of Streaming

■ → ***Media*** → ***Streaming*** → ***History*** → Highlight a history → ✉ (Edit) → Select Title field → Edit title → Select URL field → Edit URL → ✉ (Save)

- Alternatively, while streaming, press Y! → ***View history*** → Highlight a history → ✉ (Edit) → Select Title field → Edit title → Select URL field → Edit URL → ✉ (Save).

Deleting History of Streaming

■ → ***Media*** → ***Streaming*** → ***History***

■ To Delete an Item

Highlight a history → Y! (Delete) → ***Selected*** → ***Yes***

■ To Delete Multiple Items

Y! (Delete) → ***Multiple*** → Check histories → ✉ (Delete) → ***Yes***

■ To Delete All Items

Y! (Delete) → ***All*** → ***Yes***

- Alternatively, while streaming, press Y! → ***View history*** → Y! (Delete).

Entertainment

9

Entertainment Functions **9-2**

S! Applications (Japanese) **9-3**
- Downloading S! Appli 9-3
- Activating S! Appli 9-3
- Exiting S! Appli 9-3

S! Quick News (Japanese) **9-3**
- Opening List 9-3
- Viewing Update Information 9-4
- Registering S! Quick News List 9-4
- Refreshing Entries Manually 9-4
- Deleting Entries 9-4

Free Contents (Japanese) **9-5**

S! Contents Store (Japanese) **9-5**

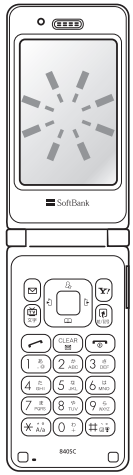
S! Information Channel (Japanese) **9-5**
- Service Registration 9-5
- New Received Information 9-5
- Using Weather Indicator 9-6

BookSurfing® (Japanese) **9-6**
- Downloading e-Books 9-6
- e-Books Viewer 9-6

Advanced Settings **9-6**
- S! Quick News 9-6
- S! Information Channel 9-7

Entertainment Functions

Access the Internet to view or download content. Subscribe to content for automatic updates. Learn how to download and use content.



S! Appli (➔P.9-3)

Play downloaded or preinstalled SoftBank S! Appli games.

S! Quick News (➔P.9-3)

View Yahoo! Keitai content update information.

Free Contents (➔P.9-5)

Access free content in S! Contents Store.

S! Contents Store (➔P.9-5)

Search and download music, games, comics, etc.

S! Information Channel/Weather (➔P.9-5)

Delivers subscribed content such as overnight news. Weather Indicator appears in Standby.

BookSurfing® (➔P.9-6)

Download and view e-books, comics, photobooks (CCF files) saved in Books.

Note

These services require separate subscriptions:

- **S! Quick News**
- **S! Information Channel/Weather**

S! Applications (Japanese)

Play downloaded or preinstalled SoftBank S! Appli games.

- For detailed instructions, see S! Appli Help or information on Internet download site.

Downloading S! Appli

1 ■ → *S! Appli* → *S! Appli List* → *Download S! Appli*

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Activating S! Appli

1 ■ → *S! Appli* → *S! Appli List*

2 Select S! Appli item

Play Network Connection Type S! Appli

- Network (Internet) access confirmation appears. Follow onscreen instructions.

Incoming Call While S! Appli is Activated

- S! Appli will be paused and Incoming call window appears.

To Check S! Appli Demand History

- Press ■ → *S! Appli* → *Demand history*.

Exiting S! Appli

1 While S! Appli is active, ☎

2 *Exit*

To pause S! Appli

- While S! Appli is active, press ☎ → *Pause*.

To resume paused S! Appli

- Press ■ → *S! Appli* → *Resume*.

To end paused S! Appli

- Press ■ → *S! Appli* → *Exit*.

Advanced

Settings

- Set S! Appli Volume (☞P.14-23)
- Adjust Display Backlight Setting (☞P.14-23)
- Set S! Appli Vibration Settings (☞P.14-23)
- Set Operation of Incoming Call/Alarm/S! Appli Start Request (☞P.14-23)
- Reset Settings of S! Appli (☞P.14-23)

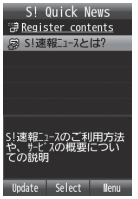
S! Quick News (Japanese)

View Yahoo! Keitai content update information.

- Check for updates of items saved in S! Quick News (➲P.9-4).
- S! Quick News requires separate subscription.

Opening List

1 ■ → *Entertainment* → *S! Quick News*



S! Quick News List

: Unread Special News
: Unread News Flash
: Unread General News
: Read Special News
: Read News Flash
: Read General news

Note

- **Using S! Quick News incurs Packet Communication charges.**

Viewing Update Information

1 ■ → *Entertainment* → *S! Quick News*

2 **Select content**

3 **Select an entry**

- Press ✉ (List) to return to S! Quick News/ Contents list.
- To connect to Internet and check for update, select an item → *Yes*.
- To view information on the next page, press Y! (Next).

Registering S! Quick News List

Register up to one special and five general news/ newsflash in S! Quick News list.

1 ■ → *Entertainment* → *S! Quick News*

2 *Register contents* → *Yes*

3 **Select content → Follow onscreen instructions**

Refreshing Entries Manually

1 ■ → *Entertainment* → *S! Quick News*

2 ✉ **(Update)**

■ **To Refresh a Content**
Highlight a content → *Selected*

■ **To Refresh Multiple Contents**
Multiple → Check contents → ✉ (Update)

■ **To Refresh All Contents**
All

- Press Y! (Cancel) to cancel refresh in process.

Deleting Entries

1 ■ → *Entertainment* → *S! Quick News*

2 Y! → *Delete*

■ **To Delete a Content**
Highlight a content → *Selected* → *Yes*

■ **To Delete Multiple Contents**
Multiple → Check contents → ✉ (Delete) → *Yes*

■ **To Delete All Contents**
All → *Enter Phone Password* → ■ (OK) → *Yes*

Advanced

Advanced Settings ☞P.9-6

- Viewing Content Details
- Refreshing S! Quick News List
- Viewing S! Quick News from List

Free Contents (Japanese)

Access free contents in *S! Contents Store*.

1. ▣ → *Entertainment* → *Free Contents*
2. *Tada-Melody (Ringtones)*/*Tada-Deco (Graphic Mail)*/*Tada-Komi (Comics)*/*Tada-Game*/*Tada-Utaban (Music Programs)* → Follow onscreen instructions

Note

- Using Free Contents incurs Packet Communication charges.

S! Contents Store (Japanese)

Search and download music, game, comics, etc. In S! Contents Store Site, ranking, new contents list, free contents, Information such as points and bush telegraph are available.

1. ▣ → *Entertainment* → *S! Contents Store*
2. Follow onscreen instructions

Note

- Using S! Contents Store incurs Packet Communication charges.

S! Information Channel (Japanese)

S! Information Channel delivers subscribed contents such as overnight news. Weather Indicator appears in Standby.

- This service is only available in Japan.
- S! Information Channel requires separate subscription.

Note

- Using S! Information Channel incurs Packet Communication charges.

Service Registration

1. ▣ → *Entertainment* → *S! Information Channel*/*Weather* → *Registration*/*Cancel*
2. Follow onscreen instructions

New Received Information

S! Information Channel contents is received automatically; notification appears in Standby.

1. Select a notification
2. Follow onscreen instructions
   - Operations are same as Yahoo! Keitai.

Using Weather Indicator

Upon subscription to S! Information Channel, Weather Indicator appears in Standby.

: Clear (daytime)
: Clear (nighttime)
: Cloudy
: Rain
: Snow
: Thunderstorm
: Later
: Intermittent

Example: → Cloudy, Intermittent rain

- In addition to the above, other information such as rainfall probability or seasonal information appears.

Advanced

Settings

- Set Weather Indicator Display Settings (☞P.14-23)
- Set Weather Indicator Update Notification (☞P.14-23)
- Set Weather Indicator Automatic Update (☞P.14-23)

BookSurfing® (Japanese)

Download and view e-books, comics, photobooks (CCF files) saved in Books. Enlarge/reduce images, scroll pages, browse images with Vibration/Sound effects.
To browse CCF files, acquire Content Key.
After changing phone models, move CCF files via Memory Card. Re-download Content Key to browse those files. Note that some contents may require re-downloading CCF files.

Downloading e-Books

1. ■ → *S! Appli* → *S! Appli List* → *ブックサーフィン*
2. *作品をさがす (Web から)* → *はい*
   - Follow onscreen instructions.

e-Books Viewer

1. ■ → *S! Appli* → *S! Appli List* → *ブックサーフィン* → *ブックフォルダ* → ***OK***
   - For operation after activation, see BookSurfing® help.

Advanced Settings

S! Quick News

Viewing Content Details

In S! Quick News list, highlight content → Y! → ***Details***

Refreshing S! Quick News List

In S! Quick News list, select content → Y! → ***Update***

- Press Y! (Cancel) to cancel.

Viewing S! Quick News from List

In S! Quick News list, select content → Y! → ***Access to web*** → ***Yes***

- Press Y! (Cancel) to view S! Quick News List.

Refreshing S! Quick News List Automatically

■ → ***Entertainment*** → ***S! Quick News*** → Y! → ***Settings*** → ***Auto refresh***

■ **To Refresh Newsflash Automatically**
Flash news → Select an item

■ **To Refresh General News Automatically**
General → ***On*** or ***Off***

■ **To Refresh Special Automatically**
Special → ***On*** or ***Off***

- Auto refresh is executed based on the set time. To view next refresh time, in S! Quick News list, highlight content → Y! → ***Details***.
- Set ***General*** to ***On*** to refresh automatically once a day.

- Setting ***Special*** to ***On*** may incur high Packet Communication charges.
- Set ***Special*** to ***On*** to refresh automatically once every four hours.
- ***Special*** and ***Flash news*** auto refresh is not executed between midnight and early AM. If ***General*** is set, news is refreshed automatically during that period.
- Auto refresh is not performed while roaming. Instead, refresh manually (P.9-4).
- Auto refresh may fail outside service area or where signal conditions are poor.
- If auto refresh fails, update news manually (P.9-4).
- Removing/replacing USIM Card cancels auto refresh.

Deleting S! Quick News List

■ → ***Entertainment*** → ***S! Quick News*** → Y! → ***Settings*** → ***Delete S! Quick News List*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → ***Yes***

S! Information Channel

Viewing after Indicator Disappears

■ → ***Entertainment*** → ***S! Information Channel/Weather*** → ***What's new?***

Viewing Information Previously Received

■ → ***Entertainment*** → ***S! Information Channel/Weather*** → ***History*** → Select an item

Receiving Disrupted Information Again

■ → ***Entertainment*** → ***S! Information Channel/Weather*** → ***Get latest contents*** → ***Yes***

Showing Weather Indicator

■ → ***Entertainment*** → ***S! Information Channel/Weather*** → ***Weather Indicator*** → ***Weather***

Updating Weather Indicator Manually

■ → ***Entertainment*** → ***S! Information Channel/Weather*** → ***Weather Indicator*** → ***Manual update*** → ***Yes***

Changing Settings for Weather Indicator

■ → ***Entertainment*** → ***S! Information Channel/Weather*** → ***Weather Indicator*** → ***Settings***

■ **To Change Display Settings**
Display setting → ***On/Off***

■ **To Change Missed Event Settings**
Missed event setting → ***On/Off***

■ **To Set Auto Update**
Auto update → ***On/Off***

Memo

Handy Extras

10

Useful Handset Applications **10-2**

Alarms **10-3**
- Setting/Resetting Alarms 10-3
- Editing Alarm 10-3

Calendar **10-4**
- Viewing Calendar 10-4
- Opening Calendar 10-5
- Saving Schedule 10-5
- Viewing Schedule 10-5

Tasks **10-5**
- Saving Tasks 10-5
- Viewing Tasks 10-5
- Marking a Task as Completed 10-6

UV Checker **10-6**

Stopwatch **10-6**

World Clock **10-7**
- Viewing World Clock 10-7
- Selecting Areas 10-7

Good Night Timer **10-7**

Calculator **10-8**

Notepad **10-8**
- Adding Notepad 10-8
- Viewing Notepad 10-8

Barcode Reader **10-8**
- Scan Barcodes/QR Code 10-8
- Using Barcode Files 10-9
- Creating QR Code 10-9
- Checking Scanned Barcode 10-10

Converter **10-10**
- Converting Currencies 10-10
- Converting Units 10-10

Dutch Treat **10-11**

Voice Recorder **10-11**
- Voice Recorder Window 10-11
- Recording Sound 10-11
- Playing Sound 10-11

File Viewer **10-12**
- Using File Viewer 10-12
- Zoom In/Out 10-13

Dummy Call **10-13**
- Setting Dummy Call 10-13
- Activating Dummy Call 10-14

Dictionary **10-14**

Advanced Settings **10-14**
- Alarm 10-14
- Calendar 10-14
- Tasks 10-16
- Good Night Timer 10-17
- Notepad 10-18
- Barcode Reader 10-18
- Currency/Unit Conversion 10-19
- Dutch Treat 10-20
- Voice Recorder 10-20
- File Viewer 10-21

Useful Handset Applications

Handset includes helpful lifestyle tools including Alarm/Calendar and Convenient tools including Calculator/Barcode Reader.

Alarm

Set Alarms (➔P.10-3).

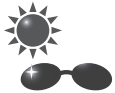
Calendar

See calendar and save schedule entries (➔P.10-4).

Tasks

Create/view to-do lists (➔P.10-5).

UV Checker



Gauge the intensity of UV rays (➔P.10-6).

Stopwatch

Use stopwatch to measure time (➔P.10-6).

World Clock

See current time in major world cities (➔P.10-7).

Good Night Timer

Disable sound and Vibration for specified amounts of time (➔P.10-7).

Calculator

Use handset as a calculator (➔P.10-8).

Notepad

Create/view text memos (➔P.10-8).

Barcode Reader

Scan barcodes or QR Codes; create QR Codes on handset (➔P.10-8).

Converter

Convert currencies or units of measure (➔P.10-10).

Dutch Treat

Calculate costs and amount of carry-over (➔P.10-11).

Voice Recorder

Record/playback voice memos, etc. (➔P.10-11).

File Viewer

View documents (➔P.10-12).

Dummy Call

Fake calls to handset (➔P.10-13).

Dictionary

Find English expressions for Japanese words or vice versa (➔P.10-14).

Alarms

Save up to ten Alarms. Use Alarm activation to activate or cancel Alarm settings. Set Alarms to repeat on specific days of the week or everyday.

Setting/Resetting Alarms

Example: Setting Alarm time

- For other items, see "Editing Alarm" (➲P.10-3).

Setting

1. ■ → ***Tools*** → ***Alarms***
2. **Select Alarm → *Alarm time* → Enter Alarm time**
3. ✉ **(Save)**
   - 🔔 is shown.
   - Set or edit Alarm and press ✉ (Save), Alarm is set to ***On*** automatically.

- At Alarm time, tone sounds and indicator appears. Handset vibrates if Vibration is not ***Off***. When Snooze is ***Off***, press ■ (Stop) to stop Alarm and Vibration.
- If calling, dialing (***Connecting***... appears), or dialing (***Dialling***... appears) at Alarm time, an indicator appears. Press ■ (Stop) to clear indicator, when Snooze is ***Off***.
- When Snooze is set to something other than ***Off***, Alarm sounds at the specified interval and specified number of times until Snooze is canceled. When you press ■ (Snooze) while Alarm sounds, Alarm is set to sound again at the specified interval. Press 📞 (End) → ***End*** to stop Alarm and to clear indicator.
- If multiple Alarms are set for the same time, the first one set sounds first. If Schedule or Tasks Alarm is set for the same time as Alarm (***Tools***), Alarm sounds first.
- When Manner mode is active, setting in ***Manner mode setting*** (➲P.10-16) applies.
- If Camera or Voice Recorder is active at Alarm Time, Alarm sounds upon operation termination.

Resetting Alarm

1. ■ → ***Tools*** → ***Alarms*** → **Highlight Alarm → ✉ (On/Off)**

Editing Alarm

1. ■ → ***Tools*** → ***Alarms*** → **Select Alarm**

■ **To Set Alarm Time**
Highlight Alarm Time → Enter Alarm time → ✉ (**Save**)

■ **To Set Alarm to Repeat**
Repeat → Select item → ✉ (Save)
- If you set Alarm for every day, Alarm will activate daily.

■ **To Activate/Cancel Alarm for Holidays**
Except holidays → ***On*** or ***Off*** → ✉ (Save)

■ **To Set Snooze**
Snooze → Select an item → ✉ (Save)
- When Snooze is set to something other than ***Off***, Alarm sounds at the specified interval and specified number of times until Snooze is canceled. When you press ■ (Snooze) while Alarm sounds, Alarm is set to sound again at the specified interval. Press 📞 (End) → ***End*** to stop Alarm and to clear indicator.
- For ***Other***, enter minutes.

■ **To Set Snooze Repeat Time (s)**
Snooze repeat times → Select an item → ✉ (Save)

■ **To Set Alarm Sound/Sound Video**
Alert tone/video → Select save location → Select file → ✉ (Save)
- Press ✉ (Play) to play file.

■ **To Adjust Alarm Volume**
Volume → Adjust volume → ✉ (Save)
• Press ✉ (play) to play file.

■ **To Set Vibration**
Vibration → Select an item → ✉ (Save)
• Press ✉ (play) to view a pattern.

■ **To Set Alarm Duration Time**
Duration → Select an item → ✉ (Save)
• For ***Other***, enter duration.

■ **To Edit Alarm Name**
In Alarm name field, enter Alarm name → ✉ (Save)

• If a Memory Card file is set as Alarm sound, copy to handset confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move to handset confirmation appears. Choose ***Yes*** to complete setting.

Advanced

Advanced Settings ☞P.10-14

● Setting Alarm Sound/Vibration in Manner Mode

Calendar

To view Calendar, add schedule in Calendar.
Select from three view modes.
Add ***Title***, ***Start date*** or other information.
Save up to 500 events including Tasks.

Viewing Calendar

Select from three view modes; Monthly view, Weekly view and Daily view.

- Press ✉ → ***View mode*** → ***Month***/***Week***/***Day*** to change view mode.
- If you select a date with Calendar entries, the entries appear as per the following.

White Character : Monday to Friday
Blue Character : Saturday
Red Character : Sunday/Holiday
Black Character : Highlighted position
Date in rectangle : Today
■ : Schedule registered

Monthly View

Weekly View

Daily View

• To change Monthly/Weekly/Daily view window for previous/next month, press ✱ / #.
• If you select a date with Calendar entries or Alarms set, the titles of Calendar entries, icons and other items appear.
: Schedule (No category)
: Schedule (Appointment)
: Schedule (Meeting)
: Schedule (Business)
: Schedule (Personal)
: Schedule (Holiday)
: Schedule (Anniversary)
: Schedule (Birthday)
: Schedule (Phone call)
: Schedule (Date)
: Schedule (Travel)
: Schedule (Shopping)
: Schedule (Miscellaneous)
: Alarm set
: Repetition set
• In Calendar, select date before 2 to enter the date in Start date or End date field.

Opening Calendar

1 ■ → *Tools* → *Calendar*

Saving Schedule

Save up to 500 events including Tasks.
Example: Saving title, start date & time, end date & time.

- For other items, see "Saving to Schedule" (P.10-14).

1 ■ → *Tools* → *Calendar*
2 ✉ (Add new)
3 Enter title
4 Select date & time → In Start date field, enter start date → In Start time field, enter start time
5 In End date field, enter end date → In End time field, enter end time
6 ■ (OK) → ✉ (Save)

Viewing Schedule

1 ■ → *Tools* → *Calendar*
2 Select the day to view
3 Select a schedule

- To view the registered number of Calendar and Task in Calendar, press ✉ → *Memory status*.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (P.10-14)

- Switching View Mode
- Opening a Specific Date
- Viewing All Events
- Viewing Schedule by Category
- Sending Schedule
- Deleting Schedule
- Viewing Secret Schedule
- Checking Missed Alarm Event
- Viewing Calendar Memory Status
- Saving Schedule as vFile

Tasks

Save up to 500 Tasks and Schedule entries; manage with lists.

Saving Tasks

Example: Saving title, due date & time

- For other items, see "Saving Task" (P.10-17).

1 ■ → *Tools* → *Tasks*
2 ✉ (Add new)
3 Enter a title
4 *Due date & time* → In Due date field, enter due date → In Due time field, enter due time → ■ (OK)
5 ✉ (Save)

Viewing Tasks

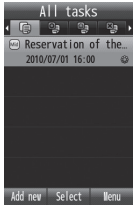
1 ■ → *Tools* → *Tasks*

- In Tasks, press tab to toggle (All Tasks), (Completed Tasks), (Uncompleted Tasks), and (Expired Tasks).

Marking a Task as Completed

1 ■ → *Tools* → *Tasks*

2 Highlight task → Y! → *Status* → *Completed*



- Select item in *Status* to toggle ● (Completed Tasks) / ✿ (Uncompleted Tasks).

Advanced

Advanced Settings ☞P.10-16

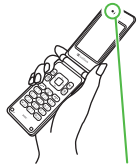
- Sending Tasks
- Sorting Tasks
- Searching Tasks
- Saving Tasks as vFile
- Setting Alarm Sound/Vibration in Manner Mode
- Viewing Secret Tasks
- Viewing Missed Alarm Event
- Viewing Task Item Status
- Deleting Tasks

UV Checker

Use UV Sensor to gauge the intensity of UV rays.

1 ■ → *Tools* → *UV checker*

2 Aim UV Sensor for one or two seconds at the sun → ■ (Check)



UV Sensor

Note

- **Quality varies depending on the angle.**
- **If UV Sensor is not clean, UV Checker may not function correctly. Clean with a soft cloth before use.**

Stopwatch

Use handset as a stopwatch. Save up to ten lap times and total elapsed time.

1 ■ → *Tools* → *Stopwatch*

2 ■ (Start)

- Press ✉ (Lap) to mark a lap. Last ten laps are saved.

3 ■ (Stop)

- Press Y! (Save) → *Yes* to save stopwatch content to notepad.
- Press ■ (Restart) to start Stopwatch again.
- Press ✉ (Reset) to clear all times.

World Clock

See current time in world's major cities.

Viewing World Clock

1 ▣ → *Tools* → *World clock*

Selecting Areas

Set second time zone to show time in World clock.

1 ▣ → *Tools* → *World clock*
- Alternatively, press ▣ → *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Clock/Calendar* → *Dual clock*

2 ◁▷ to select time zone
- To set/cancel summer time setting, press ☆ (DST).

3 ▣ (Save)

Good Night Timer

Disable Alarm/Vibration/Light for a specific period of time.
- When Good night timer is *On*, Alarm/Vibration/Light is set to *Off*, and volume level is set to 0 for functions that use sound.
- Even when Good night timer is *On*, other functions such as Voice Call etc. are available.

Note

- **Deactivate other functions before Good night timer activates. If any other function is activated, Good night timer cannot be activated.**

1 ▣ → *Tools* → *Good night timer*

2 Select Time field of Timer

3 In Start time field, enter start time → In End time field, enter end time
- Check *Activate now* to start timer after Good night timer is set.

4 ▣ (OK)

5 *Repeat* → Select an item
- Check Every day to repeat Alarm everyday.
- If *Activate now* is selected in 3, setting in Repeat will be canceled.

6 *Alarm activation* → *On* to activate Alarm with Alarm tone

7 ✉ (Save)
- Good night timer will be *On* automatically.

Calculator

Perform four arithmetic operations up to 13 digits.

1 ■ → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *Calculator*

2 **Enter numbers and operators**

- To add calculation result to notepad, press [Y!] → *Save to Notepad* → *Yes*. Complete calculation to save results to Notepad.
- To exit calculator, press [Y!] → *End*.

- To erase a symbol in a mathematical expression, press [CLEAR].
- To erase mathematical expression and result all at once, press ✉ (AC).

Notepad

Add up to 100 memos. Add memos even while placing calls (➲P.3-4).

Adding Notepad

1 ■ → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *Notepad*

2 ✉ (Add) → Enter text

3 Select category field → Select category

4 ✉ (Save)

Viewing Notepad

1 ■ → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *Notepad* → Select Notepad

Advanced

Advanced Settings ☞P.10-18

- Searching Notepad
- Viewing Notes by Category
- Sending Notepad
- Saving Notes to Data Folder
- Viewing Notepad Memory Status
- Deleting Notepad

Barcode Reader

Use Camera to scan printed barcodes, QR Code or barcode images acquired from websites, etc.

Scan Barcodes/QR Code

Barcode Reader automatically identifies and scans Barcodes (JAN code) and QR Codes. Use scanned results for handset operations such as calling.

QR code

1 ■ → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *Bar code reader* → *Scan barcode*

2 Use Display to frame barcode → ■ (Scan)

- Camera focuses and scans barcode automatically.

- Alternatively, press ■ → *Camera* → *Bar code reader* to start scanning.
- Some barcodes may be invalid.
- Scan may fail if barcode is not clear.
- Indoors, scan may fail if handset shadows barcode.
- Scan may fail when capturing multiple barcodes.

- JAN codes are one-dimensional codes made up of combinations of vertical bars of varying widths and spaces. Handset is not compatible with other 1D codes (e.g., ITF code, Code39, or Codebar/NW-7).
- QR Code is two-dimensional code with information in matrix.
- Hold handset approximately ten cm away from barcode. If it does not scan, move handset slowly to adjust the distance to fix focus.
- Press (Macro) to set/cancel macro.
- To save the scanned result, press (Save). To check the saved barcode, press → Scanned result.
- To scan multiple barcodes continuously, after activating Barcode Reader, press → Continuous scan. Choose ***Yes*** to scan the next barcode.
- Split barcodes cannot be opened or saved unless all split barcodes are scanned.
- You can use any phone numbers, mail addresses, or other items for Phone Book entries if they are contained in the scanned data (➔P.10-18). For usable information, the background color of the text turns light blue; however, if the text contains any character that is not allowed to use that information, the background area for the following characters does not turn light blue.
- Use QR Codes for text only. Handset cannot scan QR Codes created from media files.

Using Barcode Files

Use a barcode file saved in Data Folder.

1 ■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Bar code reader*** → ***Open barcode*** → **Select an item**

- With Memory Card inserted, select a file from Pictures or Digital Camera folder.

2 **Select a file**

- For split barcodes, once one portion is scanned, the rest is automatically recognized and scanned. If file name or saved directory of a split barcode has been changed, select unrecognized part to be scanned.
- Barcode with changed file size might not be scanned.
- If barcode is unrecognizable, notification appears.

Creating QR Code

Use Phone Book entry or enter text to create QR Code.

- A QR Code holds up to 211 single-byte or 105 double-byte characters.
- When volume of information is large, a split QR Code automatically appears (up to 16 QR Codes).
- Created QR Code is saved in Pictures in Data Folder. Check saved QR Code in Data Folder (➔P.10-9).

1 ■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Bar code reader*** → ***Create QR code***

2 **Create QR Code**

■ **To Create QR Code from Phone Book Entry**
Phonebook → Search and select entry (➔P.2-14) → Select a phone number

■ **To Enter Account Details**
My details

■ **To Create Text QR Code**
Text input → Enter text

3 ■ **(Save)**

- To specify saving location for created QR code, press → ***Save to*** → Select an item → ■ (Save).

- Phone Book entries converted to QR Codes contain Name, Reading name, Phone number, mail address, Address, and Memo. Other items will not be included.
- Press (Send) in QR Code confirmation window to create S! Mail with the created QR Code attached.

Checking Scanned Barcode

Check the saved scanned result.

1 ■ → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *Bar code reader* → *Scanned results*

2 **Select a result**

- If scanned result is too large, it will not appear. Some files cannot be opened.

Advanced

Advanced Settings ☞P.10-18

- Renaming Scanned Data
- Viewing Scanned Data Detail
- Deleting Scanned Data

Converter

Convert various currencies or units of measure.

Converting Currencies

1 ■ → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *Converter* → *Currency*

2 **Select Original currency field → Select currency**

3 **Select Original currency value field → Enter value**

4 **See result in Converted currency value field**

- To save results to notepad, press ▼ → *Save to Notepad* → *Yes*.
- To exit converter, press ▼ → *End*.

Converting Units

1 ■ → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *Converter* → *Length*, *Weight*, *Volume*, *Area*, or *Temperature*

2 **Select Original unit field → Select unit**

3 **Select Original unit value field → Enter value**

4 **See result in Converted value field**

- To save results to notepad, press ▼ → *Save to Notepad* → *Yes*.
- To exit converter, press ▼ → *End*.

Dutch Treat

Divide Total Cost with two different ratios.

1. ■ → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *Dutch treat*
2. **In Total cost field, enter price**
3. **In Number of people A field, enter number**
4. **In Number of people B field, enter number**
5. **◁▷ to charge ratio**
   - Cost and amount of carry-over for A and B are shown.

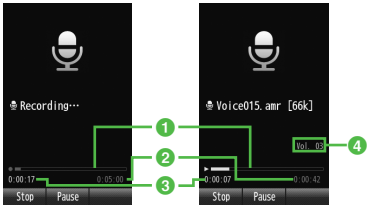
- In Dutch Treat window, press Y! (Settings) → ***Payment unit*** → Select an item → CLEAR.
- To collect extra charges, in Dutch Treat window, press Y! (Settings) → ***Collect extra fee*** → ***Yes***/***No*** → CLEAR.

Voice Recorder

Record up to 60 minutes; activate from Tools, or via Menu in Data Folder, or during a call, Message creation window.

Voice Recorder Window

Use Softkeys and Multi Selector operations to control Voice Recorder.



Recording Window　Playback Window

1. Status bar
2. Recordable time (while recording)/ Playback time (while playing)
3. Elapsed time
4. Adjust volume

Recording Sound

Recorded sound is saved to Ring songs・tones in Data Folder.

1. ■ → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *Voice recorder*
2. ■ **(Record)**
3. ✉ **(Stop)**
   - After recording, files are saved automatically to ***Ring songs・tones*** under Data Folder.
   - When recordable time has elapsed, recording automatically ends.
   - After pressing ■ (Pause), press ✉ (Save) to save file.
   - Press ■ (Pause) to pause recording. Press ■ (Record) to resume recording.

- To quickly confirm recorded content, press ■ (Play). Press ■ (Pause) again to pause playback.
- To start the next recording, press Y! → ***Record***.

Playing Sound

Play sound file saved in Data Folder.

1. ■ → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *Voice recorder*
2. Y! → *Data folder*
3. **Select a sound file**

- Press 音量 / 音量 to adjust volume.
- Use ◁▷ to rewind/fast forward.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (☞P.10-20)

- Moving Recorded Sound File
- Copying Recorded Sound File
- Sending Recorded Sound File
- Deleting Recorded Sound File
- Editing Recorded Sound File Name
- Viewing Recorded Sound File Details

File Viewer

View document files in standard view or fullscreen. Rotate Display image using menu.

- This guide describes standard view operations.

Standard View

Fullscreen View

Note

- **If a document includes many pages or complicated designs, all pages of the document may not appear properly.**
- **To view file in Japanese/English/Hangul/Chinese (simplified character)/Portuguese properly, set *Simplified* to the language.**

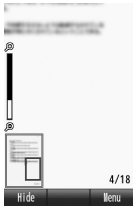
Using File Viewer

1. ● → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *File viewer*
2. **Select a file**
3. **Scroll the file**
   - Use ▲▼ to flip page.

- Open PDF, XLS, DOC, PPT, or TXT files saved in Data Folder. Select an image file saved in Data Folder and File viewer is activated automatically.
- Files with up to approximately 10 MB can be browsed. However, browse files of up to 10 MB. In some cases, files under 10 MB may not be browsable.

Zooming In/Out

1. ▣ → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *File viewer* → Select a file
2. Y! → *Zoom* → *In*/*Out*



- Alternatively, press 🔊 / 🔉 to adjust magnification.

- Press Y! → *Fit to screen* → *Page*/*Width*/*Height* to change Display view.

Advanced

Advanced Settings ☞P.10-21

- Deleting Files
- Toggling Standard View/Fullscreen View
- Searching Characters in Page
- Going to Pages
- Rotating Display Image
- Capturing Images
- Sending Files
- Editing File Name
- Protecting File
- Viewing File Details
- Viewing Shortcut Key

Dummy Call

Setting Dummy Call

Set Dummy Call timer, caller's name and number.

Enabling/Disabling Side Key Activation

1. ▣ → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *Dummy call* → *Side key activation*
2. *On* or *Off*
   - When *Side key activation* is set to *On*, in Standby, press 🔉 for two seconds to activate Dummy Call.

Setting Timer

1. ▣ → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *Dummy call* → *Set timer*
2. Select time

Setting Caller

1. ▣ → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *Dummy call* → *Set caller*
2. Select Name field → Enter caller's name
3. Select Number field → Enter caller's number

Activating Dummy Call

1 In Standby, press for 2 + seconds

- Set time in ***Set timer*** to activate timer at set time.

2 while Dummy Call rings

3 after Dummy Call ends

- If name or number is not set, ***Withheld*** appears.
- While Dummy Call rings, menu items at bottom of Display are not selectable.
- When on a Dummy Call if an actual call comes in, the actual incoming call will be given priority and the Dummy Call will be ended.
- When on a Dummy Call if an actual call comes in, the Ringtone will not sound, the tone sounds will sound.
- Alternatively, press ■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Dummy call*** → ***Run dummy call*** → ***Yes***. Dummy Call activates right after the settings even if ***Set timer*** is set.

Dictionary

Look up words in English/Japanese dictionaries.

1 ■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Dictionary***

2 ***English dictionary*** **or** ***Japanese dictionary***

3 Enter a word

4 Select a word

- To save search data to notepad, press ✉ (Save) → ***Yes***.
- Press ✉ (Switch) to toggle ***English dictionary***/***Japanese dictionary***.

Advanced Settings

Alarm

Setting/Canceling Alarm

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Alarms*** → Highlight Alarm → ✉ (On/Off)

Setting Alarm Sound/Vibration in Manner Mode

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Alarms*** → Y! → ***Manner mode setting*** → ***Alarm sound***/***Vibration*** → ***On*** or ***Off***

Calendar

Adding Schedule Quickly

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Calendar*** → ✉ (Hold:Quick) → Enter title → In Start date field, enter start date → In Start time field, enter start time → In End date field, enter end date → In End time field, enter end time → ■ (OK)

■ To Set Schedule for All Day

Check ***All day*** → ■ (OK)

Saving to Schedule

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Calendar*** → ✉ (Add new) → Enter title → Select date & time → In Start date field, enter start date → In Start time field, enter start time → In End date field, enter end date → In End time field, enter end time → ■ (OK)

■ **To Set Schedule for All Day**

Select date & time → Check ***All day*** → ■ (OK) → ✉ (Save)

■ **To Set Category**

Category → Select an item → ✉ (Save)

■ **To Set Alarm**

Alarm → ***Alarm time*** → Select an item → ***Duration*** → Select an item → ***Alert tone/video*** → Select a file location → Select a file → ***Volume*** → Adjust Volume → ***Vibration*** → Select an item → ✉ (Done) → ✉ (Save)

- For ***Other*** in ***Alarm time*** or ***Duration***, enter Alarm time or duration.
- While selecting ***Alert tone/video***, press ✉ (Play) to playback a file.
- While selecting ***Vibration***, press ✉ (Play) to view a pattern.
- If a Memory Card file is set as Alarm sound, copy to handset confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move to handset confirmation appears.

■ **To Repeat a Set Schedule**

Repeat → Select an item → Enter a number of times to repeat → ■ (OK) → ✉ (Save)

- If ***No repetition*** is selected, you do not need to enter the number of times to repeat.

■ **To Set Location**

Location → Enter location → ✉ (Save)

■ **To Set Guests**

Guests → ***From phonebook***/***Enter number***/***Enter address*** → Search and select phone number/Enter number/Enter address → ✉ (OK) → ✉ (Save)

- Press ✉ → ***Add*** to add guests.
- To remove guest, perform following operations.
  - To Remove a Guest
    Highlight a guest → ✉ → ***Remove*** → ***Selected***
  - To Remove Multiple Guests
    ✉ → ***Remove*** → ***Multiple*** → Check guests → ✉ (Remove)
  - To Remove All Guests
    ✉ → ***Remove*** → ***All***

■ **To Automatically Delete Schedule**

Expiry → Select an item → ✉ (Save)

- Upon expiry, schedule is automatically deleted from Calendar (e.g. if Expiry is ***After 1 year***, and Repetition is unset, schedule is deleted one year from event end date). If Repetition is set, schedule is deleted one year after last repetition. Select ***Off*** to cancel Auto delete.

■ **To Set Schedule in Detail**

Details → Enter text → ✉ (Save)

■ **To Set Secret**

Secret → ***On*** or ***Off*** → ✉ (Save)

Editing Schedule

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Calendar*** → Select date → Select schedule → ■ (Edit) → Save to Schedule (➲P.10-14)

Switching View Mode

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Calendar*** → ✉ → ***View mode*** → ***Month***/***Week***/***Day***

Opening a Specific Date

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Calendar*** → ✉ → ***Go to***

■ **To Show Today's Date**

Today

■ **To Toggle to a Specified Date**

Date → Enter date

Viewing All Events

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Calendar*** → ✉ → ***Show all events***

Viewing Schedule by Category

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Calendar*** → ✉ → ***List by category*** → Select item

Sending Schedule

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Calendar*** → Select date → Highlight schedule → ✉ → ***Send***

■ **To Send via Message**

Via message → Check schedules → ✉ (Send) → (➲P.4-4 S! Mail 2)

■ **To Send via Infrared**

Via infrared → Check schedules → ✉ (Send) (➲P.13-3)

- Alternatively, in Detailed information window for the schedule to send, press ✉ → ***Send*** to send it.

Deleting Schedule

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Calendar*** → Select date → Highlight schedule

■ **To Delete an Entry**

Highlight schedule → ✉ → ***Delete*** → ***Selected*** → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete Schedules for Selected Date**

Select a date in Monthly view or Weekly view → Y! → ***Delete***

- To Delete Multiple Schedules ***Multiple*** → Check schedules → ✉ (Delete) → ***Yes***
- To Delete All the Schedules ***All*** → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete Schedules for a Specified Period of Time**

In Monthly view or Weekly view, Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Periods*** → In From field, enter start date → In To field, enter end date → ● (Delete) → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete Schedules of Currently Shown Month or Week**

In Monthly view or Weekly view, Y! → ***Delete*** → ***This month*** or ***This week*** → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete All Schedules before the Highlighted Date**

In Monthly view or Weekly view, Y! → ***Delete*** → ***All past data*** → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete All Schedules**

In the Monthly view or Weekly view, Y! → ***Delete*** → ***All*** → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete Multiple Schedules Listed by Category**

In Monthly view or Weekly view, Y! → ***List by category*** → Select a category

- To Delete Multiple Schedules Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Multiple*** → Check schedules → ✉ (Delete) → ***Yes***
- To Delete All the Schedules in Category Y! → ***Delete*** → ***All (This category)*** → ***Yes***

Setting Holiday

● → ***Tools*** → ***Calendar*** → Y! → ***Settings*** → ***Set holiday*** → (if holiday is already added, Y! → ***Add*** →) Enter title → ✉ (Save)

- To change date, ***Date*** → Enter date.
- To change frequency, ***Frequency*** → Select an item.

Changing Holiday Display

● → ***Tools*** → ***Calendar*** → Y! → ***Settings*** → ***Set holiday*** → ✉ (On/Off)

Editing Added Holiday

● → ***Tools*** → ***Calendar*** → Y! → ***Settings*** → ***Set holiday*** → Select holiday → Select an entry → Edit the entry → ✉ (Save)

Deleting Added Holiday

● → ***Tools*** → ***Calendar*** → Y! → ***Settings*** → ***Set holiday*** → Highlight holiday → Y! → ***Delete***

Setting Beginning of Week

● → ***Tools*** → ***Calendar*** → Y! → ***Settings*** → ***Starting day*** → ***Sunday*** or ***Monday***

Setting Default Calendar View

● → ***Tools*** → ***Calendar*** → Y! → ***Settings*** → ***Default view mode*** → Select an item

Setting Alarm Sound/Vibration in Manner Mode

● → ***Tools*** → ***Calendar*** → Y! → ***Settings*** → ***Manner mode setting*** → ***Alarm sound/Vibration*** → ***On*** or ***Off***

Viewing Secret Schedule

● → ***Tools*** → ***Calendar*** → Y! → ***Unlock temporarily*** → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK)

Checking Missed Alarm Event

● → ***Tools*** → ***Calendar*** → Y! → ***Missed alarm event*** → Select a schedule

Viewing Calendar Memory Status

● → ***Tools*** → ***Calendar*** → Y! → ***Memory status***

Saving Schedule as vFile

In Daily view, highlight schedule → Y! → ***Save to Data Folder*** → Select item → ***Yes***

- Save location can be set to ***Memory card*** if inserted.

Tasks

Saving Task

● → ***Tools*** → ***Tasks*** → ✉ (Add new) → Enter title → ***Due date & time*** → In Due date field, enter due date → In Due time field, enter due time → ● (OK)

■ **To Set Alarm**

Alarm → ***Alarm time*** → Select an item → ***Duration*** → Select an item → ***Alert tone/video*** → Select save location → Select a file → ***Volume*** → Adjust volume → ***Vibration*** → Select an item → ▣ (Done) → ▣ (Save)

- When ***Other*** is selected in ***Alarm time***, enter Alarm date and time.
- When ***Other*** is selected in ***Duration***, enter duration time.
- While selecting ***Alert tone***, press ▣ (Play) to playback a file.
- While selecting ***Vibration***, press ▣ (Play) to view a pattern.
- If a Memory Card file is set as Alarm sound, copy to handset confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move to handset confirmation appears. Choose ***Yes*** to complete setting.
- At Alarm time, tone sounds and indicator appears. Press ▣ (Stop) to stop Alarm and indicator is cleared. If no Alarm is stopped, Missed Alarm message appears. Select the message to view the event.
- During a call, while dialing (***Connecting***... appears) or while dialing (***Dialling***... appears), at Alarm time, an indicator appears. Press ▣ (Stop) to clear indicator.

■ **To Set Priority**

Priority → Select an item → ▣ (Save)

■ **To Set Details**

Details → Enter content → ▣ (Save)

■ **To Activate/Cancel Secret**

Secret → ***On*** or ***Off*** → ▣ (Save)

Editing Tasks

▣ → ***Tools*** → ***Tasks*** → Select a task → ▣ (Edit) → Edit Task (➲P.10-17)

Sending Tasks

▣ → ***Tools*** → ***Tasks*** → Ⓨ! → ***Send***

■ **To Send via Message**

Via message → Check tasks → ▣ (Send) → (➲P.4-4 S! Mail ❷)

■ **To Send via Infrared**

Via infrared → Check tasks → ▣ (Send) → (➲P.13-3)

- Alternatively, in Task details window, press ▣ (Send) and select an item.

Sorting Tasks

▣ → ***Tools*** → ***Tasks*** → Ⓨ! → ***Sort by*** → ***Deadline*** or ***Priority***

Searching Tasks

▣ → ***Tools*** → ***Tasks*** → Ⓨ! → ***Search*** → ***By due date/By title*** → Enter Expiration/Title

Saving Tasks as vFile

▣ → ***Tools*** → ***Tasks*** → Select a task → Ⓨ! → ***Save to Data Folder*** → Select an item → ***Yes***

- With Memory Card inserted, ***Memory card*** can be set as save location.

Setting Alarm Sound/Vibration in Manner Mode

▣ → ***Tools*** → ***Tasks*** → Ⓨ! → ***Manner mode setting*** → ***Alarm sound/Vibration*** → ***On*** or ***Off***

Viewing Secret Tasks

▣ → ***Tools*** → ***Tasks*** → Ⓨ! → ***Unlock temporarily*** → Enter Phone Password → ▣ (OK)

Viewing Missed Alarm Event

▣ → ***Tools*** → ***Tasks*** → Ⓨ! → ***Missed alarm event*** → Select a missed task

Viewing Task Item Status

▣ → ***Tools*** → ***Tasks*** → Ⓨ! → ***Memory status***

Deleting Tasks

▣ → ***Tools*** → ***Tasks***

■ **To Select a Tab and Delete**

Completed tasks, ***Uncompleted tasks***, or ***Expired tasks*** tab → Ⓨ! → ***Delete***

- To Delete Multiple Tasks
  Multiple → Check tasks → ▣ (Delete) → ***Yes***
- To Delete All the Tasks in a Tab
  All this tab → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete All Tasks**

Ⓨ! → ***Delete*** → ***All tasks*** → Enter Phone Password → ▣ (OK) → ***Yes***

Good Night Timer

Resetting Good Night Timer

▣ → ***Tools*** → ***Good night timer*** → Ⓨ! (Reset) → ***Yes***

Notepad

Changing Notepad Category

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Notepad*** → Select a Notepad → Select Category field → Select category

Editing Notepad

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Notepad*** → Select a Notepad → Select Edit memo field → Edit Notepad

Searching Notepad

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Notepad*** → Y! → ***Search*** → Enter search text

Viewing Notes by Category

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Notepad*** → Y! → ***List by category*** → Select category

Sending Notepad

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Notepad*** → Y! → ***Send***

■ To Use Notepad Data as Message Text

As message text → (➲P.4-4 S! Mail ❷)

- If Notepad contains Hangul characters, Graphic Mail and Auto art will be unavailable.

■ To Send via Message

Via message → Check Notepads → ✉ (Send) → (➲P.4-4 S! Mail ❷)

■ To Send via Infrared

Via infrared → Check Notepads → ✉ (Send) → (➲P.13-3 Sending Data Items One at a Time ❶)

- Press ✉ (Send) in Details window to send.

Saving Notes to Data Folder

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Notepad*** → Y! → ***Save to Data Folder*** → ***Phone/Memory card*** → Select Notepad → ***Yes***

- With Memory Card inserted, ***Memory Card*** is selectable.

Viewing Notepad Memory Status

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Notepad*** → Y! → ***Memory status***

Deleting Notepad

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Notepad***

■ To Delete a Notepad

Highlight a Notepad → Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Selected*** → ***Yes***

- Alternatively, in Details window, press Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Yes***

■ To Delete Multiple Notepads

Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Multiple*** → Check Notepads → ✉ (Delete) → ***Yes***

■ To Delete All Notepads

Y! → ***Delete*** → ***All*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → ***Yes***

Barcode Reader

Using Scanned Data

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Bar code reader*** → ***Scan barcode*** → Scan a barcode

■ To Call Scanned Phone Number

Select a number with ***TEL:*** or ten to 32-digit number starting with 0 → ■ (Select) → ***Voice call***, ***Video call*** or ***Edit before call***

- If ***Edit before call*** is selected, edit phone number then press ☎ / ■ ( ).

■ To Send Message to Scanned Phone Number

Select a number with ***TEL***: or ten to 32-digit number starting with 0 → ■ (Select) → ***Create message*** → ***S! Mail*** or ***SMS*** (➲P.4-4 S! Mail ❺, ➲P.4-5 SMS ❺)

■ To Send Message to Scanned Mail Address

Highlight mail address contained with @ → ■ (Select) → ***Create message*** → (➲P.4-4 S! Mail ❺)

■ To Access Scanned URL

Highlight URL starting with ***http://*** or ***rtsp://*** → ■ (Select) → ***Open Yahoo! Keitai/Open PC site browser*** → ***Yes***

■ To Save Scanned Entry to Phone Book

Highlight an entry → ■ (Select) → ✉ (Save)

■ To Save Scanned Number, etc. as a New Phone Book Entry

Highlight a phone number, etc. → ■ (Select) → ***Add to phonebook*** → ***New*** → (➲P.2-13 Creating New Entries ❷)

■ **To Add Scanned Number, etc. to an Existing Phone Book Entry**

Highlight a phone number, etc. → ● (Select) → ***Add to phonebook*** → ***Update*** → Search and select entry (➔P.2-14) → Creating New Entries (➔P.2-13)

■ **To Add Scanned URL to Bookmarks**

Highlight a URL → ● (Select) → ***Add to bookmark*** → Enter a title

■ **To Copy Scanned Mail Address or Phone Number, etc.**

Highlight mail address or phone number → ▼ → ***Copy address/Copy number/Copy***

- For ***Copy***, highlight the first character → ● (Start) → Highlight the last character → ● (End).

■ **To Paste Scanned Phone Number, Mail Address, etc. to Message Text**

▼ → ***Send*** → ***S! Mail*** or ***SMS*** → (➔P.4-4 S! Mail 2, P.4-5 SMS 2)

■ **To Copy Scanned Characters**

▼ → ***Copy*** → Highlight the first character → ● (Start) → Highlight the last character → ● (End)

Attaching Created QR Code to Message to Send

● → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Bar code reader*** → ***Create QR code*** → ***Phonebook/My details/Text input*** → (➔P.10-9 Creating QR Code 2) → ✉ (Send) → (➔P.4-4 S! Mail 2)

Using Saved Scanned Data

● → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Bar code reader*** → ***Scanned results*** → Select scanned result → ▼

■ **To Send Scanned Result**

Send → ***S! Mail*** or ***SMS*** → (➔P.4-4 S! Mail 2, P.4-5 SMS 2)

■ **To Copy Scanned Result**

Copy → Highlight the first character → ● (Start) → Highlight the last character → ● (End)

Renaming Scanned Data

● → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Bar code reader*** → ***Scanned results*** → Highlight result → ▼ → ***Rename*** → Enter name

Viewing Scanned Data Detail

● → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Bar code reader*** → ***Scanned results*** → Highlight result → ▼ → ***Detail***

Deleting Scanned Data

● → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Bar code reader*** → ***Scanned results***

■ **To Delete a Selected Result**

Highlight result → ▼ → ***Delete*** → ***Selected*** → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete Multiple Results**

▼ → ***Delete*** → ***Multiple*** → Check items → ✉ (Delete) → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete All Results**

▼ → ***Delete*** → ***All*** → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → ***Yes***

Currency/Unit Conversion

Viewing Exchange Rate

● → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Converter*** → ***Currency*** → ✉ (Rate)

Changing Exchange Rate

● → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Converter*** → ***Currency*** → ✉ (Rate) → Select a currency → Enter rate → ● (Save)

Adding Currency Unit

● → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Converter*** → ***Currency*** → ✉ (Rate) → ✉ (Add) → Enter currency unit name → Enter rate

Deleting Added Currency Unit

● → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Converter*** → ***Currency*** → ✉ (Rate) → Highlight currency → ▼ (Delete)

Dutch Treat

Calculating Price with Calculator

In Dutch Treat window, highlight Total Cost → ✉ (Calc)

Saving Costs & Carry-over

In Dutch Treat window, ■ (Save) → ***Yes***

- To save costs or carry-over, Total Cost and Number of People in A or B must be entered.

Voice Recorder

Setting Recorded Sound File as Ringtone, etc.

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Voice recorder*** → Record a sound → ✉ (Set as) → Select a Ringtone

- If ***Caller ringtone*** is selected, search and select entry (➲P.2-14).

Moving Recorded Sound File

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Voice recorder*** → Record a sound → Y! → ***Data folder***

■ To Move a File

Highlight file → Y! → ***Move*** → ***Selected*** → Select save location

■ To Move Selected Files

Y! → ***Move*** → ***Multiple*** → Check files → ✉ (Move) → Select save location

■ To Move All Files

Y! → ***Move*** → ***All*** → Select save location

Copying Recorded Sound File

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Voice recorder*** → Record a sound → Y! → ***Data folder***

■ To Copy a File

Highlight file → Y! → ***Copy*** → ***Selected*** → Select save location

■ To Copy Selected Files

Y! → ***Copy*** → ***Multiple*** → Check files → ✉ (Copy) → Select save location

■ To Copy All Files

Y! → ***Copy*** → ***All*** → Select save location

Sending Recorded Sound File

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Voice recorder*** → Record a sound → Y! → ***Send***

■ To Send via Message

Via message → (➲P.4-4 S! Mail ❷)

■ To Send via Infrared

Via infrared (➲P.13-3)

Editing Recorded Sound File Name

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Voice recorder*** → Record a sound → Y! → ***Rename*** → Enter file name

Viewing Recorded Sound File Details

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Voice recorder*** → Record a sound → Y! → ***Details***

Deleting Recorded Sound File

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Voice recorder*** → Record a sound → Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Yes***

Changing Default Name at Saving

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Voice recorder*** → Y! → ***Rec. settings*** → ***Default name*** → Enter file name

Changing Recording Time

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Voice recorder*** → Y! → ***Rec. settings*** → ***Recording time*** → Select an item

- If ***Other*** is selected, enter recording time.

Changing Default Saving Location

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***Voice recorder*** → Y! → ***Rec. settings*** → ***Save to*** → Select an item

File Viewer

Deleting Files

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***File viewer***

■ To Delete a File

Highlight file → Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Selected*** → ***Yes***

- Alternatively, in Details window, press Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Yes***.

■ To Delete Selected Files

Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Multiple*** → Check files → ✉ (Delete) → ***Yes***

■ To Delete All Files

Y! → ***Delete*** → ***All*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → ***Yes***

Toggling Standard View/Fullscreen View

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***File viewer*** → Select file → Y! → ***Full screen***/***Normal screen***

- Alternatively, press 📷.

Searching Characters in Page

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***File viewer*** → Select a file → Y! → ***Search*** → Enter keyword

- After the search results appear, to find the next/previous word in the document that matches the same search word, press ■ (Next).
- To exit the search mode, press CLEAR.
- To try to search using other words without exiting, press Y! → ***Search***.

Going to Pages

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***File viewer*** → Select a file → Y! → ***Go to*** → Select an item

- For ***Page***, specify page number.
- Use 📱 to go to another page.

Rotating Display Image

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***File viewer*** → Select file → Y! → ***Rotate***

- Alternatively, press 3 def.

Capturing Images

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***File viewer*** → Select a file → Y! → ***Screen capture***

- Captured image is saved in JPEG format to Pictures in Data Folder of handset.

Sending Files

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***File viewer*** → Select a file → Y! → ***Send***

■ To Send via Message

Via message → (P.4-4 S! Mail 2)

■ To Send via Infrared

Via infrared (P.13-3)

- Alternatively, select ***File viewer*** → Highlight file → Y! → ***Send*** → ***Via message***/***Via infrared***.

Editing File Name

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***File viewer*** → Select a file → Y! → ***Rename*** → Enter file name

- Alternatively, select ***File viewer*** → Highlight file → Y! → ***Manage*** → ***Rename*** → Enter file name.

Protecting File

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***File viewer*** → Select a file → Y! → ***Lock*** or ***Unlock***

- Alternatively, select ***File viewer*** → Highlight file → Y! → ***Lock***/***Unlock***.

Viewing File Details

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***File viewer*** → Select a file → Y! → ***Details***

- Alternatively, select ***File viewer*** → Highlight file → Y! → ***Details***.

Assigning Scroll Range

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***File viewer*** → Select a file → Y! → ***Settings*** → ***Panning*** → Select an item

Fitting to Display

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***File viewer*** → Select a file → Y! → ***Settings*** → ***Reflow*** → ***On*** or ***Off***

Setting Map

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***File viewer*** → Select a file → Y! → ***Settings*** → ***Map on*** → ***On*** or ***Off***

- Current position is framed in blue.

Setting Controller Display

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***File viewer*** → Select file → Y! → ***Settings*** → ***Controller*** → ***On*** or ***Off***

- Set to ***On*** to show controller only for fullscreen.

Editing Default File Name at Screen Capture

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***File viewer*** → Select a file → Y! → ***Settings*** → ***Screen capture name*** → Enter file name

Viewing Shortcut Key

■ → ***Tools*** → ***Convenient*** → ***File viewer*** → Select file → ***Shortcut***

Handset Security

11

Handset Security **11-2**

Changing Phone Password **11-3**

Changing Phone Password 11-3

Changing PIN/PIN2 11-3

Phone Lock **11-3**

Activating/Canceling Phone Lock 11-3

Password Lock 11-4

Activating/Canceling PIN Code 11-4

Activating/Canceling USIM Lock 11-4

Secure Remote Lock 11-5

Function Lock **11-5**

Activating Function Lock 11-5

Activating/Canceling Secret Mode 11-5

Activating/Canceling Secret Data Folder 11-5

Activating Mobile Tracker 11-5

Restoring Default Settings **11-6**

Clearing Phone Memory 11-6

Resetting Settings 11-6

All Reset 11-7

Handset Security

This handset features built-in security measures for safer handset use.

Locking & Restricting Handset Operations

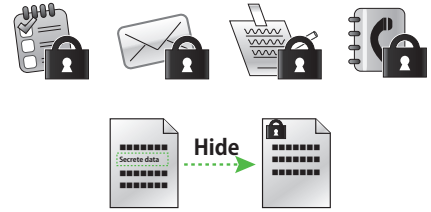
Lock handset for information security. Handset operations cannot be executed while locked.

- Password

  Use Phone Lock, Password Lock, or USIM Lock (P.11-3).

Function Lock

Activate to require Phone Password to use Phone Book, Messaging, or other privacy related functions.



Restoring Default Settings

Clear Phone Book entries; restore function settings to defaults.

Changing Phone Password

There are two security codes; Phone Password and PIN/PIN2.

Changing Phone Password

Default: Phone Password is set to "9999".

1. ● → *Settings* → *Security* → *Change password*

2. Enter current Phone Password → ● (OK)
3. Enter new Phone Password (four- to eight-digit) → ● (OK)
4. Enter new Phone Password again → ● (OK)

Advanced

Settings

- Change Phone Password (☞P.14-24)

Changing PIN/PIN2

1. ● → *Settings* → *Security* → *Change PIN* or *Change PIN2*
   - Set *PIN certification* to *On* to enable PIN code (➲P.11-4).
2. Enter current PIN or PIN2 → ● (OK)
3. Enter new PIN or PIN2 (four- to eight-digit) → ● (OK)
4. Enter new PIN or PIN2 again (four- to eight-digit) → ● (OK)

Phone Lock

The following lock functions are available:

- Phone Lock
- Password Lock
- PIN Certification
- USIM Lock
- Secure Remote Lock

Activating/Canceling Phone Lock

Activate this function to require Phone Password each time handset is powered on.

1. ● → *Settings* → *Security*
2. *Phone lock* → *On* or *Off*
3. Enter Phone Password → ● (OK)

- All operations including receiving calls are not accepted unless you enter Phone Password.

Password Lock

After Password Lock is activated, in Standby, press any key to show Phone Password entry window. Enter Phone Password to unlock.

1. ■ → *Settings* → *Security*
2. *Password lock* → *On* or *Off*
3. Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK)

- Even if Password Lock is set, some operations such as receiving calls can be performed.
- Upon Password Lock activation, Standby Display reappears. Press any key to show Phone Password entry window. Enter Phone Password to unlock, *Password lock* is automatically set to *Off*.

Activating/Canceling PIN Code

PINs are security codes for USIM Card. For details, see "USIM Card" (➲P.1-4).

To activate PIN Certification each time the power is turned on, set this function to *On*.

Setting

1. ■ → *Settings* → *Security*
2. *PIN certification* → *On* or *Off*
3. Enter PIN → ■ (OK)

Canceling

If PIN or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three consecutive times, PIN Lock or PIN2 Lock is activated to restrict handset operations.

Note

- **For more information about PUK and PUK2, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (➲P.15-31).**
- **Entering incorrect PUK Code ten consecutive times locks USIM Card (turning handset off does not reset the count).**
- **Once locked, USIM Card cannot be unlocked. Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (➲P.15-31).**

To cancel PIN Lock or PIN2 Lock, perform following operations.

1. **In PUK Code entry window, enter PUK Code → ■ (OK)**
2. **Enter new PIN or PIN2 (four- to eight-digit) → ■ (OK)**
3. **Enter new PIN or PIN2 again (four- to eight-digit) → ■ (OK)**

Advanced

Settings

- Activate/Cancel PIN Certification (☞P.14-24)
- Change PIN (☞P.14-24)
- Change PIN2 (☞P.14-24)

Activating/Canceling USIM Lock

Activate this function to require USIM Password to use handset with a different USIM Card.

1. ■ → *Settings* → *Security*
2. *USIM lock* → *On* or *Off*
3. Enter USIM Password (four- to eight-digit) → ■ (OK)
   - To set to *On*, enter USIM Password (four- to eight-digit) again and press ■ (OK).

- USIM Password is dedicated to USIM Card authentication. If USIM Password matches, another USIM Card can be used in handset. Change USIM Password each time *USIM lock* is set to *On*.
- If you forget USIM Password, insert USIM Card with *USIM lock* set to *On* and reset all settings (➲P.11-7).

Advanced

Settings

- Activate/Cancel USIM Lock (☞P.14-24)

Secure Remote Lock

If handset is lost, lock handset functions or clear handset data remotely from PCs or other mobile phones.

The following functions are available in ***Secure Remote Lock***.

- Lock
- Unlock
- Clear data
- Confirm handset status
- Show history

• For details, see SoftBank Mobile Website, or contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (➔P.15-31).

Function Lock

Activating Function Lock

Activate this function to require Phone Password to open Phone Book, Calendar/Notepad/Tasks, Yahoo! Keitai, Messages, Call Log, or Data Folder.

1. ■ → ***Settings*** → ***Security*** → ***Function lock***
2. **Check functions** → ✉ **(Save)**
3. **Enter Phone Password** → ■ **(OK)**

Activating/Canceling Secret Mode

Select ***Hide*** to activate this function and hide secret Phone Book entries, Messaging folders, Calendar schedules, or Tasks.

1. ■ → ***Settings*** → ***Security*** → ***Secret mode***
2. **Enter Phone Password** → ■ **(OK)**
3. ***Show*** **or** ***Hide***

• Powering handset off then back on activates ***Secret Mode***.

Activating/Canceling Secret Data Folder

Activate ***Secret mode*** to see additional Secret folders within ***Data Folder***.

1. ■ → ***Settings*** → ***Security*** → ***Secret data folder***
2. **Enter Phone Password** → ■ **(OK)**
3. ***Show*** **or** ***Hide***

• Powering off handset then back on activates ***Secret data folder***.

Activating Mobile Tracker

Activate this function to send SMS notification to a specified address when a different USIM Card is inserted. Specify up to two addresses.

1. ■ → ***Settings*** → ***Security*** → ***Mobile tracker***
2. **Enter Phone Password** → ■ **(OK)**
3. **Select Activation field** → ***On***
4. **Select Recipients field**

5 **Select To field → *Direct input* → Enter address → ✉ (Done)**

- To enter an address from Phone Book, select To field → ***Phonebook*** → Search and select entry (P.2-14) → Select a phone number.

6 **Select Sender field → Enter sender name**

7 **✉ (Save)**

- When a different USIM Card is inserted, SMS notification is sent to the specified address upon handset activation. Nothing appears on handset whose USIM Card is replaced. If Phone Password is incorrectly entered three consecutive times when trying to set Mobile Tracker, SMS notification is also sent.
- To delete a recipient address, press ■ and select ***Remove*** in Step 5.

Advanced

Settings

- Activate/Cancel Phone Lock (☞P.14-24)
- Activate/Cancel Password Lock (☞P.14-24)
- Activate/Cancel Function Lock (☞P.14-24)
- Activate/Cancel Secret Mode (☞P.14-24)
- Set Secret Mode on Sub-folder in Data Folder (☞P.14-24)
- Set Mobile Tracker (☞P.14-24)

Restoring Default Settings

Clearing Phone Memory

Clear Data Folder, Messaging, handset Phone Book entries, Calendar/Tasks, Notepad, or User's Dictionary. Alternatively, clear all handset files at once.

1 **■ → *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Phone memory* → ✉ (Clear)**

2 **Check items → ✉ (Clear)**

3 **Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → *Yes***

Resetting Settings

Reset settings to clear saved contents/settings and resort default settings.
The following settings are affected.

Item	Affected Settings
Tools	• ***Alarms***
TV	• ***Set channels*** • ***Settings***
Settings	• Every setting

The following settings are not affected.

Item	Unaffected Settings
Tools	• ***Calendar*** • ***Tasks*** • Exchange rate in ***Currency*** • ***Notepad***
Data Folder	• Contents in each folder
TV	• ***TV links*** • ***Program guide*** • ***TV player*** • ***Reservation list***
Phone	• ***Phonebook*** • ***Call log*** • Numbers in ***My details*** • ***Group name*** • ***Favorites*** • ***Mail group***
Settings	
Phone settings	• ***User's dictionary***
Security	• ***USIM lock*** • ***PIN certification*** • ***Change PIN*** • ***Change PIN2***
Call settings	• ***Voice mail on*** settings • ***Call forwarding on*** settings • ***Call waiting*** settings • ***Call barring*** settings • Edit ***Black list*** contents
Messaging	• Messages in folders

1 ▣ → *Settings* → *Security* → *Reset* → *Reset settings*

2 **Enter Phone Password** → ▣ **(OK)** → *Yes*

- Handset restarts.

All Reset

Restore handset to defaults and delete Phone Book entries (Phone), Call Log, Messaging, and Data Folder contents/settings. However, preinstalled files are not deleted.

1 ▣ → *Settings* → *Security* → *Reset* → *All reset*

2 **Enter Phone Password** → ▣ **(OK)** → *Yes*

- Handset restarts.

Advanced

Settings

- Restore Settings to Default Values (☞P.14-24)

Memo

Data Folder & Memory Card

12

Data Folder 12-2
Default Folders 12-2

Viewing Files 12-3
Using Image Viewer 12-3
Viewing Graphics/Animation 12-4
Zooming In/Out 12-4
Saving Face Link 12-4
Face Link 12-5

Managing Files/Folders 12-6
Creating Folders 12-6
Renaming File/Folder 12-6
Moving File/Folder 12-6
Copying Files/Folders 12-6
Deleting Files/Folders 12-7

Memory Card 12-8
Initializing Memory Card 12-8
Memory Card Installation 12-8
Viewing Memory Card Files 12-9

Viewing Memory Status 12-9

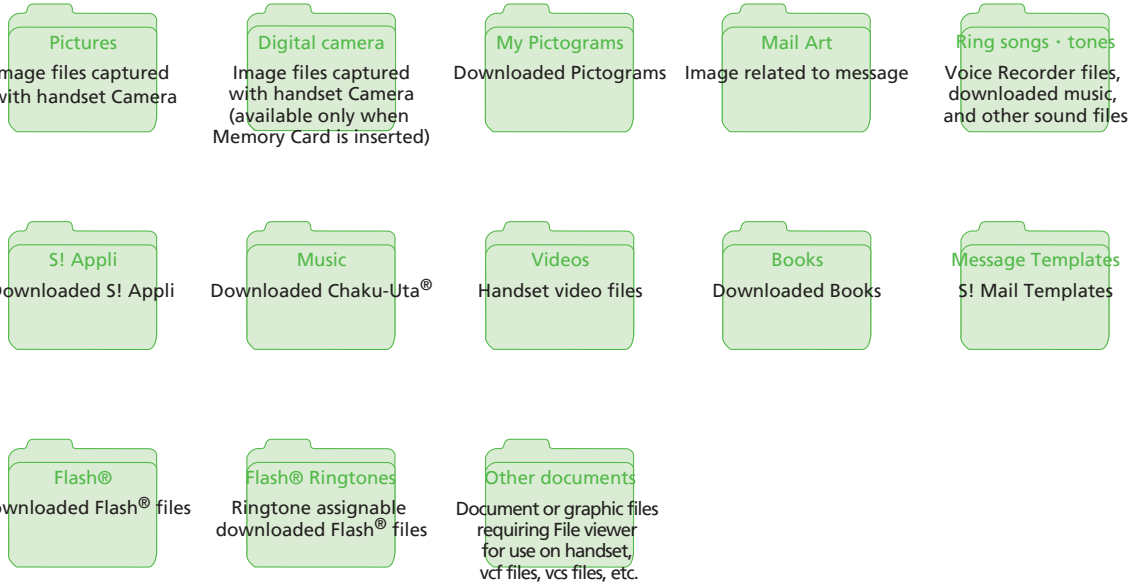
Advanced Settings 12-10
Viewing Files 12-10
Managing Files/Folders 12-11
Memory Status 12-12

Data Folder

Handset files are organized in folders according to file format.

Default Folders

Handset automatically sorts files into these folders:



- Save up to 999 files/folders in each default folder.
- In a folder, use ***Memory status*** to confirm memory. Alternatively, confirm memory in ***Settings*** (P.12-9).
- In Data Folder, press [Y!] → ***Memory switch*** → ***Phone+Memory card***/***Phone***/***Memory card*** to toggle Data Folder.
- appears in some folders as downloaded site shortcut. Select the link to access website via Yahoo! Keitai.
- If files in one default folder are too large, handset performance may fall.

Viewing Files

View files in Data Folder, like picture, animation etc. Select Data Folder, file list appears.

1. ● → ***Data Folder***
2. **Select a file location**
3. **Select a file in List window**

- **File List Indicators**
  - : Nontransferable
  - : Nontransferable and unusable
  - : Protected
  - : Copy protected file (transferable, content key valid)
  - : Copy protected file (transferable, content Key expired)
  - : Copy protected file (nontransferable, content key valid)
  - : Copy protected file (nontransferable, content key expired)
  - : Used as Wallpaper/Ringtone etc.
- Nontransferable/copy protected files other than preinstalled ones cannot be used.
- **Activating Camera or Voice Recorder from Data Folder**
  - With Pictures folder open, activate Camera in Camera mode (P.12-11).
  - With Videos folder open, activate Camera in Video mode (P.12-11).
  - With Ring songs・tones folder open, activate Voice Recorder (P.12-11).

Using Image Viewer

View images in Portrait or Landscape view. Wide image is shown as small image to show entire image.

1. ● → ***Data Folder*** → ***Pictures***
2. **Select a file**

3. ⊞ **to move image**

- Some images may not appear.

Viewing Graphics/Animation

1. ■ → *Data Folder* → Select a file location
2. Select a file

- Press (Pause) to pause.
- Press (Play) to play.

- View SWF files in Data Folder.
- Some files may not appear.
- Selecting a compatible file from Data Folder automatically activates Flash® Viewer.

Zooming In/Out

1. ■ → *Data Folder* → *Pictures* → Select an image
2. ■ (Zoom)
3. or to zoom in/out
   - To scroll window, use .

Saving Face Link

Link images to Phone Book entries to place calls or message directly from still images.
Link up to ten Phone Book entry items to a still image.

Capturing & Setting Still Images

1. ■ → *Camera* → *Camera*
2. → *Settings* → *Setup* → *Face link display* → *On* → (Back)
3. ■ ( )

- Available only when Face Link is ***On*** and ***Auto save*** is ***Off*** or ***On (Preview manual).***
- If captured image is recognized, frame appears.
- If Face Link has been saved, name appears. If not, *?* appears.
- If captured image is not recognized, frame does not appear. The image is saved and Viewfinder reappears.
- If ***Auto save*** is ***On***, image will be saved and Viewfinder will reappear.

4. → *Edit face link*
5. Search and select entry (➔P.2-14)
6. ■ (OK)

Adding Data to Saved Image

1. ■ → *Data Folder* → *Pictures*
2. Select a file
3. → *Face link*
4. → *Add name tag*
5. Search and select entry (➔P.2-14)
6. to move name tag → ■ (Save)

Face Link

Place a call or message via Face Link image.

Calling/Messaging from Image Window

1. ■ → *Data Folder* → *Pictures* → Select file
2. [Y!] → *Face link* → ■ ( )
   - If multiple Face Links are set, use ⊠ to select one.
3. Place a call or message
   - **■ To View Other Face Link Images**
     This person's photo
   - **■ To Select Images to be Saved as Face Link Images**
     This person's photo → [Y!] → *Add* → Select file → ■ (Register)
     - For an image without Face Link, select *This person's photo* → [Y!] → *Add* → Select a file → *Yes* → Use ⊠ to move name tag → ■ (Save).
   - **■ To Search & Save Same Face Link Images**
     This person's photo → [Y!] → *Face search* → *Yes*
   - **■ To Cancel Same Face Link Images**
     This person's photo → Highlight a file → [Y!] → *Release* → *Selected* → *Yes*
     - To Cancel Multiple Face Link Images
       This person's photo → [Y!] → *Release* → *Multiple* → Check files → [✉] (Remove) → *Yes*
     - To Cancel All Face Link Images
       This person's photo → [Y!] → *Release* → *All* → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → *Yes*
   - **■ To Place a Voice Call**
     Call
   - **■ To Send Face Link Data via Message**
     Mail → (➲P.4-4 S! Mail 5)
   - **■ To View Phone Book**
     Phonebook

Sending Face Link Image via Message

1. ■ → *Data Folder* → *Pictures* → Select file
2. [Y!] → *Face link* → Highlight name tag
3. [Y!] → *Send via message*
4. Send (➲P.4-4 S! Mail 5)

Advanced

Advanced Settings (☞P.12-10)

- Viewing Slide Show
- Deleting File
- Confirming File Details
- Capturing Document View Page
- Going to PDF/DOC File View Pages
- Searching PDF/DOC File Text

Managing Files/Folders

Make sub-folder under Pictures folder or Videos folder. Copy, move, or delete folder or file.

Creating Folders

Create sub-folder in default folders.
Use ***Set secret*** to hide created folder.

1. ■ → ***Data Folder***
2. **Select default folder**
3. Y! → ***Manage*** → ***Create folder***
   - If there is no sub-folder or file in the folder, menu varies.
4. **Enter name**
   - With Memory Card inserted, select ***Phone***/***Memory card*** → Enter name.

- New folder cannot be created in a created folder.

Renaming File/Folder

1. ■ → ***Data Folder***
2. **Select default folder → Highlight a file or sub-folder**
3. Y! → ***Manage*** → ***Rename folder***/***Rename***
4. **Enter name**

- Protected files cannot be renamed.

Moving File/Folder

When Memory Card is inserted, move files or sub-folders between handset (Phone) and Memory Card.

Note

- **Protected files cannot be moved.**
- **Downloaded files may not appear/play properly if moved to another device or if a different USIM Card is inserted.**
- **Nontransferable and unusable files (), protected files (), or nontransferable and Copy protected files (or) cannot be moved to Memory Card.**

1. ■ → ***Data Folder***
2. **Select default folder**
3. **Highlight a file or sub-folder →** Y! **→ *Move***
4. **Move files or sub-folders**
   - ■ **To Move an Item**
     Selected
   - ■ **To Move Multiple Items**
     Multiple → Check files or sub-folders → ✉ (Move)
   - ■ **To Move All Files or Sub-folders in the Same Folder**
     All
5. **Select a destination folder → *Move here***
   - When Memory Card is inserted, select ***Phone*** or ***Memory card***, then select a move destination folder.

- If file/sub-folder with the same name exists, text entry window appears; edit file/sub-folder name.
- To move a file set for Wallpaper or Ringtone to Memory Card, a confirmation appears. Choose ***Yes*** to release the setting and move the file. When moving multiple or all files, choose ***No*** to move only files without set functions. Press CLEAR to cancel moving.

Copying Files/Folders

Paste copied file in the folder/sub-folder, or paste copied sub-folder in the folder. When Memory Card is inserted, copy folders between handset and Memory Card.

Note

- **Nontransferable files cannot be copied.**

1. ■ → ***Data Folder***
2. **Select default folder**
3. **Highlight a file or sub-folder →** Y! **→ *Copy***
4. **Copy file or sub-folder**

■ **To Copy an Item**
Selected

■ **To Copy Multiple Items**
Multiple → Check files or sub-folders → ✉ (Copy)

■ **To Copy All Files or Sub-folders in the Same Folder**
All

5 Select a destination folder → *Paste here*

- When Memory Card is inserted, select ***Phone*** or ***Memory card***, then select a copy destination folder.

- When pasting files/sub-folders in the same location as the original, numbers such as "_001" are automatically added to pasted file/sub-folder names.
- If file/sub-folder with the same name exists, text entry window appears; edit file/sub-folder name.

Deleting Files/Folders

1 ■ → *Data Folder* → Select a file location

2 Highlight a file or sub-folder in list window → Y! → *Delete*

3 Delete a file

■ **To Delete an Item**
Selected → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete Multiple Items**
Multiple → Check files → ✉ (Delete) → ***Yes***

■ **To Delete All Files in the Same Folder**
All → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → ***Yes***

- To delete folder, highlight folder → Y! → ***Delete folder*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → ***Yes***.
- When deleting a file that is set to a function or protected, a confirmation appears. Choose ***Yes*** to cancel the setting and delete the file. When deleting multiple files, choose ***Yes*** → ***Except protected*** to delete only files not set to functions and unprotected files.
- When deleting files with Content Key, a confirmation appears. Choose ***Yes*** to delete both file and Content Key.

Advanced

Advanced Settings ☞P.12-11

- Sending Files
- Sorting Files
- Deleting Content Key
- Setting Secret in Sub-folder
- Canceling Secret Setting Temporarily
- Activating Camera Mode
- Activating Video Mode
- Recording Sound
- Setting & Canceling File Lock
- Setting Images as Wallpaper etc.
- Setting Sound File to Ringtone in Normal Mode
- Setting Video File to Ringtone in Normal Mode

Memory Card

Handset is compatible with microSD™ and microSDHC™ Memory Card. Purchase Memory Card to use Memory Card-related handset functions.

- Use only recommended Memory Card. Other memory cards may not perform properly.
- Do not place labels or stickers on Memory Card. These items may affect card performance or result in lost information.
- Never disassemble or modify Memory Card.
- Do not expose Memory Card to strong impacts, pressure or liquids.
- Do not touch Memory Card terminals or expose them to metal objects.
- Do not expose Memory Card to dust, high humidity, or excessive heat.
- Do not use in the presence of corrosive gases.
- Avoid heat sources and do not dispose of in fire.
- Memory Card is a consumable item. Card performance deteriorates with usage.

- SoftBank Mobile recommends 64, 128, 256, 512 MB, 1, 2 GB microSD™/microSDHC™ Memory Cards or 4, 8, 16 GB microSDHC™ Memory Cards.

Note

- **Protect Important Information**
  Memory Card files may be lost or damaged by accident or due to a malfunction. Back up entries and store separately. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for damage from lost or altered information.
- **Memory Cards do not have Write Protection Switch. There is a risk of accidental erasure or overwriting of files.**

Initializing Memory Card

Formatting a Memory Card on handset deletes all previously saved files, etc. Format Memory Card on handset before use.

1. ■ → *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Memory card* → ✉ (Format) → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → *Yes*

Memory Card Installation

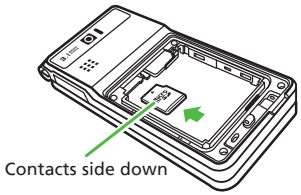
Turn handset power off before inserting or removing Memory Card.

Note

- **Do not apply excessive force when inserting/removing Memory Card; may damage Memory Card or handset.**
- **Take care not to lose removed Memory Card.**
- **Avoid touching/damaging Memory Card contacts when inserting/removing it.**
- **Do not remove battery/Memory Card while card files are being accessed; may damage handset/card or result in damaged/lost files.**

Inserting

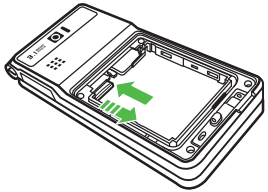
1. Remove battery (➲P.1-7)
2. With contacts down, insert Memory Card until it clicks



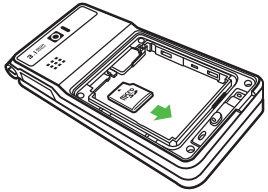
3. Replace battery

Removing

1. **Remove battery (➔P.1-7)**
2. **Push Memory Card lightly until it clicks**



3. **Card pops out; remove it**



4. **Replace battery**

Viewing Memory Card Files

1. ■ → ***Data Folder***
2. ✉ → ***Memory switch*** → ***Memory card***
   - Inset Memory Card before checking it.
   - To check handset Data Folder, press ✉ → ***Memory switch*** → ***Phone***.

Advanced

Settings

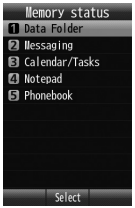
- Check Memory Card Details (☞P.14-25)
- Rename Memory Card (☞P.14-25)
- Format Memory Card (☞P.14-25)
- Set Default Memory to Phone/Memory Card (☞P.14-26)

Viewing Memory Status

View following information.

- Status of memory in Data Folder
- Status of message folder
- Status of Calendar or Tasks items registered
- Status of Notepad items
- Status of Phone Book (handset and USIM Card)

1. ■ → ***Settings*** → ***Memory settings*** → ***Memory status***



2. **View each item**

■ **To View Data Folder Status**

Data Folder → ***Phone memory/Memory card***

■ **To View Messaging Status**

Messaging

- Received, Drafts, Sent and Unsent Message memory appears by Size.
- Press ✉ (Count) to see messaging memory by Count.
- USIM Card SMS appears in ***Count*** only.

■ **To View Calendar or Tasks Status**
Calendar/Tasks

■ **To View Notepad Status**
Notepad

■ **To View Phone Book Entries**
Phonebook

Advanced

Settings

- Confirm Total/Remaining Phone Memory (☞P.14-25)
- Clear Phone Memory (☞P.14-25)
- View Memory Status (☞P.14-25)

Advanced Settings

Viewing Files

Viewing Slide Show

● → ***Data Folder*** → ***Pictures*** → Highlight a file in list window → ● (View) → ▽ → ***Slide show***

- To pause/resume Slide show, press ● (Pause) / ● (Restart).
- To stop Slide show, press ✉ (Stop).

Purchasing/Downloading Content Key

● → ***Data Folder*** → Select a file location → Highlight a file → ▽ → ***Manage*** → ***Download Content key***

Viewing Graphics/Animation in SWF

● → ***Data Folder*** → Select a file location → Select a file → ▽

■ **To Toggle Full/Normal View**
Full screen/Normal screen

■ **To Replay**
Replay

■ **To Zoom In/Out**
Zoom

■ **To Change Image Quality**
Quality → Select item

■ **To Change Image Direction**
Rotate

Deleting File

● → ***Data Folder*** → Select a file location → Select a file → ▽ → ***Delete*** → ***Yes***

Confirming File Details

● → ***Data Folder*** → Select a file location → Select a file → ▽ → ***Details***

Capturing Document View Page

● → ***Data Folder*** → Select a file location → Select file → ▽ → ***Screen capture***

- Captured image is saved to Pictures folder.

Going to PDF/DOC File View Pages

● → ***Data Folder*** → Select a file location → Select a file → ▽ → ***Go to*** → ***Previous page/Next page/First page/Last page/Page***

- If ***Page*** is selected, specify page number.

Searching PDF/DOC File Text

● → ***Data Folder*** → Select a file location → Select a file → ▽ → ***Search*** → Enter text

- Words that match are highlighted. Press ● (Next) to search next.

Managing Files/Folders

Editing Image with Image Editor

■ → ***Data Folder*** → Select a file location → Select a file → Y! → ***Edit*** → ***Image editor*** → (➔P.7-11 Editing Still Images 4)

Adding Dynamic Effect to Image

■ → ***Data Folder*** → Select a file location → Select a file → Y! → ***Edit*** → ***Dynamic effect*** → (➔P.7-12)

Sending Files

■ → ***Data Folder*** → Select a file location → Highlight a file → Y! → ***Send***

■ To Send via Message

Via message (➔P.4-4 S! Mail 2)

■ To Send via Infrared

Via infrared → Check files → ✉ (Send) (➔P.13-3)

Sorting Files

■ → ***Data Folder*** → Select a file location → Y! → ***Sort by*** → Select an item

- Sort by following order:
  - Descending order by date (***Date***)
  - File type (***Type***)
  - File name (***Name***)
  - Ascending order by file size (***Size***)
  - Title (***Title***)
  - Content Key status (***Content key type***)
- Folders appear at the top of list.
- When selecting ***Type***, files are sorted in alphabetical order according to file extensions.
- When selecting ***Name***, files are sorted in order of numerics → alphabets → Japanese syllabary.
- Files in Message templates folders cannot be sorted by ***Type***.
- When selected ***Content key type***, files appear as follows: Unrestricted → Nontransferable → Copy Protected (content key valid) → Copy Protected (content Key expired) → Invalid Nontransferable.
- Files without title names cannot be sorted by ***Title***.

Adding Sound Files/Video Files to Playlist

■ → ***Data Folder*** → ***Ring songs · tones***, ***Music***, or ***Videos*** → Highlight a file → Y! → ***Manage*** → ***Add to playlist***

- To create a new playlist and add files to it, press ✉ (New) in Add to Playlist window.

Managing Content Key in Data Folder

■ → ***Data Folder*** → Select a file location → Y! → ***Manage*** → ***Content key info*** → Select Content Key to view

- When a folder containing a Content Key is opened, all Data Folder/Memory Card Content Keys appear.
- If no files require Content Key, ***Content key info*** does not appear.

Deleting Content Key

■ → ***Data Folder*** → Select a file location → Y! → ***Manage*** → ***Content key info***

■ To Delete an Item

Highlight a Content Key → Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Selected*** → ***Yes***

■ To Delete all Items

Y! → ***Delete*** → ***All*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → ***Yes***

- If no files require Content Key, ***Content key info*** does not appear.

Setting Secret in Sub-folder

■ → ***Data Folder*** → Select Sub-folder and save location → Highlight folder → Y! → ***Set secret*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK)

- Only folder saved in handset is selectable.
- To release the secret setting, press Y! → ***Unset secret*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK).

Canceling Secret Setting Temporarily

■ → ***Data Folder*** → Select a folder location → Y! → ***Unlock temporarily*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK)

Activating Camera Mode

■ → ***Data Folder*** → ***Pictures*** → Y! → ***Take photo***

Activating Video Mode

■ → ***Data Folder*** → ***Videos*** → Y! → ***Record video***

Recording Sound

■ → ***Data Folder*** → ***Ring songs · tones*** → Y! → ***Record sound***

Setting & Canceling File Lock

■ → ***Data Folder*** → Select a file location → Highlight a file → [Y!] → ***Lock/Unlock***

- Save file to handset to set file lock.
- Set file lock to restrict renaming, moving, or deleting.

Setting Images as Wallpaper etc.

■ → ***Data Folder*** → Select a file location → Select a file → [Y!] → ***Set as***

■ To Set Image as Wallpaper

Wallpaper → Preview image → ■ (Set)

■ To Set Image as Incoming Image

Caller ID → Search and select Phone Book entry (➲P.2-14) → ■ (Set)

■ To Set Image as Alternative Picture

Still image → ■ (Set)

- If a Memory Card file is set as incoming image or Ringtone, copy file to handset first confirmation appears. If file is copy protected, move file to handset first confirmation appears. Choose ***Yes*** to complete setting.

Setting Sound File to Ringtone in Normal Mode

■ → ***Data Folder*** → Select a file location → Highlight a file → [Y!] → ***Set as***

■ To Set to Ringtone for Each Function

Voice ringtone/Video/ringtone/Message ringtone/Missed call notification ringtone/S! Quick News ringtone/Delivery report ringtone

■ To Set as Ringtone for Phone Book Entry

Caller ringtone → Search and select entry (➲P.2-14)

- If a Memory Card file is set as incoming image or Ringtone, copy file to handset first confirmation appears. If file is copy protected, move file to handset first confirmation appears. Choose ***Yes*** to complete setting.
- Only copy protected MPEG4 AAC, AAC+, or Enhanced AAC+ files can be set. However, copy protected files with play count restriction cannot be set.

Setting Video File to Ringtone in Normal Mode

■ → ***Data Folder*** → Select a file location → Highlight a file → [Y!] → ***Set as***

■ To Set to Ringtone for Each Function

Voice ringtone or ***Video ringtone***

■ To Set to Ringtone for Phone Book Entry

Caller ringtone → Select entry (➲P.2-14)

- Only copy protected MPEG4 AAC, AAC+, or Enhanced AAC+ files can be set. However, copy protected files with play count restriction cannot be set.

Registering File to Other Functions

■ → ***Data Folder*** → ***Other documents*** → Select vcf/vcs file → ■ (Register)

- Register vcf, vcs, etc. files saved in Data Folder to Phone Book or Calendar.

Memory Status

Deleting Registered/Saved Data

■ → ***Data Folder*** → ***Memory status*** → ***Phone/Memory card*** as required → Highlight item → [✉] (Delete) → ***Yes***

■ To Delete an Item/Multiple Items

Check items → [✉] (Delete) → ***Yes***

■ To Delete all Items

[Y!] (Mark all) → [✉] (Delete) → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → ***Yes***.

- Alternatively, press ■ → ***Settings*** → ***Memory settings*** → ***Memory status*** → Select function → ***Phone memory/Memory card*** as required → Highlight item → [✉] (Delete) → ***Yes***.
- Delete message folder messages, Data Folder files, Calendar/Tasks, or Phone Book entries.
- If file(s) are locked or set for another function, a confirmation appears.

Connectivity & File Backup

13

File Transfers & Backup **13-2**

Infrared **13-3**
- Aligning Infrared Ports 13-3
- Sending Files 13-3
- Receiving Files 13-4

USB Connection **13-4**
- USB Connection 13-4
- Sending/Receiving in Mass Storage 13-5

Memory Card Backup **13-5**
- Backup Precautions 13-5
- Backing up to Memory Card Manually 13-6
- Loading from Memory Card 13-6
- Backing up to Memory Card Automatically 13-6

S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB) **13-7**
- Before Using S! Addressbook Back-up 13-7
- Precautions for Synchronizing 13-7
- Synchronizing Phone Book Entries 13-8
- Setting Auto Sync 13-8

Advanced Settings **13-9**
- S! Addressbook Back-up 13-9

File Transfers & Backup

Transfer files via Infrared, etc. Use S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB)* to back up handset Phone Book entries.
*S! Addressbook Back-up requires separate subscription.

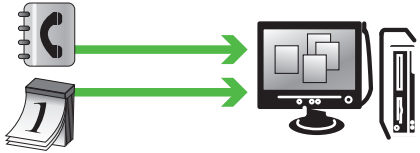
File Transfers

Use these functions to transfer handset files:

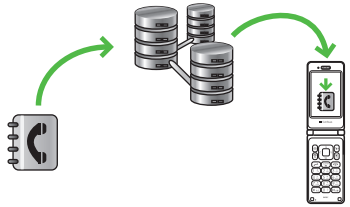
- Infrared (➔P.13-3).
- USB Connection (➔P.13-4).

File Backups

Back up handset files to Memory Card or PC (➔P.13-5).



Back up Phone Book entries to Server via S! Addressbook Back-up.
Restore lost Phone Book entries from S! Addressbook Back-up.
Edit SAB via PC (➔P.13-7).



Infrared

Exchange files wirelessly with infrared-compatible handsets, PCs or other devices.

- Handset Infrared is based on IrMC1.1. Transmission may be unavailable for some functions, even when IrMC1.1 is supported on the other party's handset.
- Transmissions may be inhibited in direct sunlight, under fluorescent lighting or near infrared devices.
- Send and receive Phone Book entries or Calendar entries, Account Details, Schedules, Tasks, still images, videos, sound files, music files, and others. Send either all Phone Book entries, Calendar/Tasks or Bookmarks/Notepad/Received msg./Drafts/Sent msg. in a single transfer.

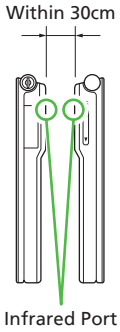
- Authorization Code is a four-digit code used to execute infrared file transfers between devices. Enter same Authorization Code on both devices when using Transfer All.

Note

- **Infrared is unavailable while Internet services is in use, or while editing messages/files.**
- **Some received files cannot be saved on handset.**

Aligning Infrared Ports

- Place devices within 30 cm. Align device ports. Do not place objects in between devices.



- Maintain port alignment until transmission ends.
- A soiled port may inhibit transmission. Clean port with a soft cloth beforehand.
- If transfer fails, a confirmation appears. Review "Aligning Infrared Ports," choose ***Yes*** to try again.

Sending Files

First, activate Infrared on the other device.

Sending Items One at a Time

1 Send

- In list, press ▽ → ***Send*** → ***Via infrared*** → Select item → ✉ (Send).

- Some functions allow sending from Details/Playback window.

Transferring All

1 ● → ***Infrared*** → ***Transfer all***

2 Enter Phone Password → ● (OK)

3 ***Phonebook, Calendar/Tasks, Bookmarks, Notepad, Received msg., Drafts or Sent msg.***

- For ***Phonebook***, choose ***Yes*** to transfer images.

4 Enter Authorization Code (four-digit) → ● (OK)

Receiving Files

Note

• Files cannot be received when Key Lock is active or during Software Update.

Receiving One Item at a Time

1 ■ → *Infrared* → *Receive*
- Handset is ready to receive files.

2 **Begin sending from other device within three minutes**

3 **Save confirmation appears, choose *Yes***
- To save image file, choose ***Pictures*** or ***Mail Art***.
- To save pictograms, choose ***Pictures***, ***Mail Art*** or ***My Pictograms***.
- To save Flash® files, choose ***Flash®*** or ***Flash® Ringtones***.
- Press [Y!] (Cancel) to cancel receiving.
- Press [⏻] to terminate data reception.

• If vcf file contains incoming image exceeding 100KB, handset deletes the image then saves it in Phone Book.

Receiving All

1 ■ → *Infrared* → *Receive*
- Handset is ready to receive files.

2 **Begin sending from other device within three minutes**

3 **Enter Authorization Code (four-digit) → ■ (OK)**
- Enter same Authorization Code as sender.

4 **Select a saving method**

■ **To Add Files as New Entries**
Add new

■ **To Overwrite Current Entries**
Delete & Overwrite → ***Yes*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK)
- Receiving all entries deletes existing handset entries except for Account Details. Receiving Account Details deletes existing Account Details except for handset phone number.

- Press [Y!] (Cancel) to cancel receiving.
- Press [⏻] to terminate reception.

Advanced

Settings

- Receive Infrared Transmission (☞P.14-26)
- Transfer Account Details (☞P.14-26)
- Transfer Files (☞P.14-26)
- Transfer All Phone Book Entries, Calendar/Tasks , Bookmarks, Notes or Messages at Once (☞P.14-26)

USB Connection

Connect handset to PC to transfer files between devices.
Handset supports USB 2.0.
Install Samsung New PC Studio and USB driver first. For installation instructions, PC operating environment, etc., access SAMSUNG Website (http://jp.samsungmobile.com/pc/lineup/840download.html).

USB Connection

The following operations are available:
- Transfer handset Data Folder files to PC
- Import PC files and save to Data Folder
- Perform Packet Communications

Note

• Using handset to access the Internet via PC or PDA (Mobile Data Communication) rapidly incurs high Packet Communication charges. Take notice of large Packet Communications when using Mobile Data Communication.

Sending/Receiving in Mass Storage

With Memory Card inserted, connect handset to PC via USB Cable to manage card files on PC.

Connecting/Disconnecting to a PC

1. **Connect handset to PC via USB Cable**
2. **▣ → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Mass storage* → *Yes***
3. **Enter Phone Password → ▣ (OK)**
4. **Use PC to access Memory Card files**
   - Mass Storage is unavailable while receiving S! Mail, or using Samsung New PC Studio.
   - Calling and Messaging are unavailable in Mass Storage.
5. **On PC, perform device removal**
6. **In Mass storage, Y! (Exit)**
7. **Disconnect USB Cable**

Note

• Never disconnect USB Cable before safely removing device from the PC first.

Advanced

Settings

● Activate Mass Storage (☞P.14-26)

Memory Card Backup

Back up Phone Book entries, etc. to Memory Card (package backup). Restore backed up items as required (package restoration).

- Restore from Backup in case of accidental data loss.
- Backups are saved by type (transfer date is file name).
- Available Backup types

- Phone Book
- Calendar
- Tasks
- Received msg.
- Drafts
- Sent msg.
- Unsent msg.
- Notepad
- Contents keys
- Bookmarks

• Use Backup to save files, share information between Memory Card-compatible handsets, or move files to a newly purchased handset.

Backup Precautions

- Not available when battery is low.
- During backup or restoration, handset transmissions are not possible.
- Some files cannot be backed up. Some backed up files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs, etc.
- Backup may fail if handset/Memory Card memory is too low.
- Handset holds up to 500 Calendar/Tasks entries. When 500 entries are restored from Memory Card, a confirmation appears and extra entries are not saved.
- Yahoo! Keitai, PC Site Browser bookmarks are backed up.
- If a backed up bookmark is too large it may not be restorable.
- Some images set to Phone Book entries may not be transferred because of size.
- Backup data saved on Memory Card is not accessible on handset until restored from Memory Card.
- When backing up Content Keys, note the following:
  - Backup file can hold only one Content Key at a time. To back up another Content Key, a confirmation appears and the previous backup file is overwritten (to keep the previously backed up files, restore the Content Key to handset from Memory Card and then perform backup again).
  - Restoring a file with a Content Key to handset adds the Content Key to handset without overwriting any existing Content Keys on handset.

Backing up to Memory Card Manually

1 ■ → *Settings* → *Backup & Restore* → *Backup*

2 *Yes* → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK)

3 *Phonebook*, *Calendar*, *Tasks*, *Received msg.*, *Drafts*, *Sent msg.*, *Unsent msg.*, *Notepad*, *Contents keys* or *Bookmarks*

4 Confirmation appears, choose *Yes*

- Press Y! (Cancel) → *Yes* to cancel backup.
- If *Contents keys* backup file already exists, an overwrite confirmation appears. Press ✉ (Yes) to overwrite the file.

Loading from Memory Card

Selecting Item to Back up

1 ■ → *Settings* → *Backup & Restore* → *Restore*

2 *Yes* → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → *Selected item*

3 *Phonebook*, *Calendar*, *Tasks*, *Received msg.*, *Drafts*, *Sent msg.*, *Unsent msg.*, *Notepad*, *Contents keys* or *Bookmarks*

4 Select a file

- To delete a backup file, highlight file → Y! (Delete) → *Yes*.

5 *Add* or *Overwrite*

- To cancel restoration, press Y! (Cancel) → *Yes*.

Backing up from Auto Back up

1 ■ → *Settings* → *Backup & Restore* → *Restore*

2 *Yes* → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → *Auto backup item*

3 Select item → *Yes*

- To cancel backup, press Y! (Cancel) → *Yes*.

Backing up to Memory Card Automatically

Note

- Separate subscription required to use this function.
- Before setting, set *Auto Sync Settings* to *On* in S! Addressbook Back-up setting (➲P.13-8).
- Default: *Auto backup* is *On*, and *Backup cycle* is *Every week*.
- Auto Backup starts only when Handset is in Standby.
- If Auto Backup is disturbed, it starts at the time set for the next day.

1 ■ → *Settings* → *Backup & Restore* → *Auto backup*

2 *Backup cycle*

3 *Cycle*

- ■ To Back up Once a Week
  Every week → Select day
- ■ To Back up Once a Month
  Every month → Enter date

4 *Start time* → Enter start time → CLEAR

5 *Backup items* → Check items → ✉ (Save)

6 *Encryption settings* → *Phonebook*/*Calendar*/*Tasks*/*Messages*/*Notepad*/*Bookmarks* → *On*/*Off*

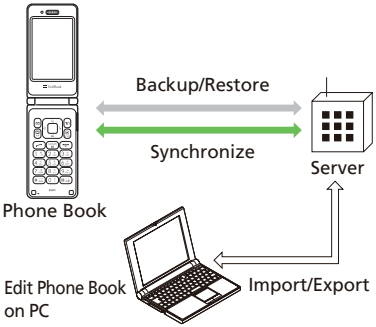
Advanced

Settings

- Back up Memory (☞P.14-25)
- Restore Memory (☞P.14-25)

S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB)

Back up handset Phone Book entries on Server or synchronize handset Phone Book entries with SAB. Restore lost handset Phone Book entries from SAB.



Before Using S! Addressbook Back-up

Note

- **SAB use requires separate subscription.**
- **Connections between handset and SAB (Backup, Restore, or Update) incur Packet Communication charges.**

- If you should change handsets, select an SAB compatible handset to take over SAB entries.
- After an application, when Network Information is retrieved*, ***Auto Sync Settings*** will be ***On*** automatically. After editing Phone Book, backup will start automatically.
- Even after ***Auto Sync Settings*** is set to ***Off***, if Network Information is retrieved Auto Sync will be initialized and set to ***On***.
- Confirm ***Auto Sync Settings*** is set to ***Off*** after canceling the services.

Sync mode will be set to ***Normal***. Auto Sync starts about ten minutes after editing of Phone Book has begun.

Precautions for Synchronizing

Available synchronization modes are as follows.

Sync Mode	Description
Normal	Backs up handset entries and updates SAB. If handset Phone Book entry and SAB entry item are both updated, SAB entry item takes priority.
Sync from Client	Backs up updated handset entries.
Backup	Deletes SAB entries and uploads handset entries.
Sync from Server	Downloads updated SAB entries to handset.
Restore	Deletes all the latest handset entries and downloads SAB entries to handset (only the 840SC).

- Synchronizing in ***Normal*** mode is performed regardless of Sync mode setting when using SAB for the first time or the last Sync was not completed correctly by canceling, etc.

- These items cannot be synchronized with SAB; using Restore for these items will delete them from handset:
  - Picture
  - Ringtone settings, Vibration settings (Voice Call, Video Call, or Message)
  - Blood type

- Select backup/restore timing and Sync mode carefully to avoid accidental entries deletion.
  - Delete all handset entries then select ***Normal***, ***Sync from Client***, or ***Backup*** to delete all SAB entries.
  - Delete all SAB entries then select ***Normal***, ***Sync from Server***, or ***Restore*** to delete all handset entries.
- If number of entry items savable on handset varies from SAB, synchronization will reflect lower number.
- When SAB service is canceled, Phone Book entries on Server are deleted.

Synchronizing Phone Book Entries

Connect to SAB to synchronize SAB entries with handset Phone Book entries.

Note

• Starting Sync connect to network. Packet Communication charges apply. Network connection is automatically disconnected with synchronization.

1 ▣ → ***Phone → S! Addressbook Back-up → Start sync***

- Synchronize in ***Normal*** mode.
- If synchronize in ***Sync from Client/Backup/Sync from Server/Restore*** mode, press ▣ → ***Phone → S! Addressbook Back-up → Details → Backup/Restore*** → Select an item.
- Alternatively, press ▣ → ***Entertainment → S! Addressbook Back-up → Start sync***.

Setting Auto Sync

If ***Auto sync settings*** is set to ***On***, setting frequency and Sync mode are required.

1 ▣ → ***Phone → S! Addressbook Back-up → Details → Auto Sync Settings***

- Alternatively, press ▣ → ***Entertainment → S! Addressbook Back-up → Details → Auto Sync Settings***.

2 ***On/Off → On***

3 **Set items**

■ **To Back up Once a Month**
Every month → In Date field, enter date → In Time field, enter time → ▣ (OK)

■ **To Back up Once a Week**
Every week → Select day → In Time field, enter time → ▣ (OK)

■ **To Back up Ten Minutes after Editing Phone Book Entries**
After editing phonebook

4 ***Normal/Sync from Client/Backup/Sync from Server/Restore***

5 ▣ **(OK)**

- In 2, set ***On/Off*** to ***Off*** to cancel Auto Sync settings.

Advanced Settings

S! Addressbook Back-up

Viewing S! Addressbook Back-up History

■ → ***Phone*** → ***S! Addressbook Back-up*** → ***Details*** → ***Sync log*** → Select a log

Deleting S! Addressbook Back-up History

■ → ***Phone*** → ***S! Addressbook Back-up*** → ***Details*** → ***Sync log*** → Highlight log → ✉ (Delete) → ***Yes***

Memo

Handset Customization

14

Phone Settings 14-2
Handset Settings 14-2

Sounds & Vibration & External Light Settings 14-4
Sounds & Vibration 14-4
External Light Settings 14-5

Display & Font Settings 14-5

Manner Mode Settings 14-7

Call Settings 14-7

Phone Book Settings 14-12

Messaging Settings 14-12
Custom Mail Address 14-12
S! Mail & SMS 14-12
S! Mail 14-15
SMS 14-16

Internet Settings 14-16
Yahoo! Keitai 14-16
PC Site Browser 14-17

Digital TV Settings 14-18
TV Alarm 14-18
Data Broadcast 14-19
Display & Sound 14-19
Recording 14-20
Incoming Calls & Alarms 14-20
Auto Power Off 14-20

Camera Settings 14-20
Photo 14-20
Video 14-21

Media Player Settings 14-22
Music 14-22
Movie 14-22

Entertainment Settings 14-23
S! Information Channel 14-23
S! Applications 14-23

Security Settings 14-24

Memory Settings 14-25

Connectivity Settings 14-26
Infrared 14-26
USB 14-26
Network 14-26

Phone Settings

Handset Settings

Start Here ■ → *Settings* → *Phone settings*

Change User Interface Language Default 日本語	*言語選択* → Select an item
Set Time Zone Updating Default Prompt first	*Date & Time* → *Set date & time* → *Time zone updating* → Select an item → ✉ (Save)
Change Home Zone Time Default GMT+09:00	*Date & Time* → *Set date & time* → *Home zone* → ◉ to select city → ■ (Select) → ✉ (Save) • Select the zone closest to your locality.
Activate/Cancel Daylight Savings Time	*Date & Time* → *Set date & time* → *Home zone* → ◉ to select city → Highlight Daylight saving → ✉ (Mark) → ■ (Select) → ✉ (Save)
Set Time	*Date & Time* → *Set date & time* → In Time field, enter time → ✉ (Save) • Some functions are disabled when time is not set.
Set Date	*Date & Time* → *Set date & time* → In Date field, enter date → ✉ (Save) • Some functions are disabled until date is set.
Change Time Format Default 24 H	*Date & Time* → *Set date & time* → *Time format* → Select an item → ✉ (Save)
Change Date Format Default YYYY/MM/DD	*Date & Time* → *Set date & time* → *Date format* → Select an item → ✉ (Save)
Set Time Correction Default On, Correction timing: Via S! Information Channel	*Date & Time* → *Time correction* → *Auto correction* → *On* or *Off* • To specify when to correct the time, select *Correction timing* → Check an item → ✉ (Save). • Selecting *Manual correction* → *Yes* immediately corrects the time.
Set Earphone Settings Default Earphone	*Earphone settings* → *Earphone*/*Earphone* + *Speaker*
Activate/Cancel Prediction Default On	*Text input settings* → *Prediction* → *On* or *Off*
Activate/Cancel Learning Default On	*Text input settings* → *Learning* → *On* or *Off*
Activate/Cancel Auto Capitalization Default On	*Text input settings* → *Auto capitalization* → *On* or *Off*
Activate/Cancel Flexible Search Default On	*Text input settings* → *Flexible search* → *On* or *Off*
Reset Learning Function	*Text input settings* → *Reset learning* → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → *Yes*

Clear History for Pictograms/Emoticons	***Text input settings*** → ***Clear history*** → ***Yes***
Change Font Size **Default** Standard	***Text input settings*** → ***Font size*** → ***Large***/***Standard***/***Small***
Change Cursor Speed **Default** Off	***Text input settings*** → ***Auto cursor*** → ***Off***/***Slow***/***Normal***/***Fast***/***Very fast***
Save Entries to User's Dictionary	***User's dictionary*** → ***Japanese dictionary***/***English dictionary*** → ***New entry*** → Select Word field → Enter word or sentence → Select Reading field → Enter reading → ✉ (Save)
Edit User's Dictionary Entries	***User's dictionary*** → ***Japanese dictionary***/***English dictionary*** → Select entry → Edit word and reading → ✉ (Save)
Delete User's Dictionary Entries	***User's dictionary*** → ***Japanese dictionary***/***English dictionary*** → Highlight word → Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Selected*** → ***Yes*** • To delete several words, select ***Japanese dictionary***/***English dictionary*** → Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Multiple*** → Check words → ✉ (Delete) → ***Yes***. • To delete all the words, select ***Japanese dictionary***/***English dictionary*** → Y! → ***Delete*** → ***All*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → ***Yes***.
Activate/Cancel Simple Search **Default** Off	***Simple search*** → ***On*** or ***Off*** • ***On***: In Standby, press keys assigned to characters used in Phone Book entry Readings.
Set Side Keys to Activate Reject Call/Mute Ringer **Default** Silence	***Side key*** → Select item • Set settings for pressing 🔊 / 🔉 for 1 + seconds during a call.
Set Any Key Answer **Default** Off	***Any key answer*** → ***On*** or ***Off*** • ***On***: Press any keys except ✉, 📞, Y!, 📷, 🔊 and 🔉 to answer a call.
Answer Incoming Call by Opening Handset **Default** Off	***Active folder*** → ***On*** or ***Off*** • ***On***: Open the handset to answer a call.
Set Keypad Light Illumination Mode **Default** Normal mode	***Keypad light*** → Select item • ***Normal mode***: Keypad light illuminates for Backlight time duration. • ***Saving mode***: Keypad light turns off for set duration. • If ***Saving mode*** is set, in Starting time field, enter start time → In Ending time field, enter end time → ✉ (Save).

Sounds & Vibration & External Light Settings

Sounds & Vibration

Start Here ■ → ***Settings*** → ***Sound settings***

Adjust Volume **Default** Voice call/Video call/Message/Missed call notification/Delivery report/Phone sounds: Level 3, S! Quick News: Off	***Volume*** → Select item → ◀▶ to adjust image • If ***Ringtone reducer*** is ***On*** (➔P.14-11), Ringtone volume is reduced to Level 1 for the first four seconds, regardless of Ringtone volume set for Voice/Video Call. • Use ▲ / ▼ to adjust Ringtone volume while handset rings. • To mute Voice/Video Call or Message tones, set ***Volume 0*** and ***Vibration*** to ***Off***. 🔇 appears.
Set Ringtone for Voice Call/Video Call **Default** Voice call/Video call：Samsung Tune	***Ringtone*** → ***Voice call***, or ***Video call*** → Select save location for a file → Select a file • Press ✉ (Play) to playback.
Set Ringtone to Something Other than Voice Call/Video Call **Default** Message: Samsung Tune, Missed call notification/S! Quick News/Delivery report: BusinessTone	***Ringtone*** → Select a Ringtone field → ***Ringtone*** → Select save location for a file → Select a file • Press ✉ (Play) to playback.
Set Ringtone Duration to Something Other than Voice Call/Video Call **Default** 5 Seconds	***Ringtone*** → Select an item → ***Duration*** → Enter duration → ■ (Select)
Search Machi-Uta™	***Machi-Uta*** → ***Music search*** → Follow onscreen instructions
Set Machi-Uta™	***Machi-Uta*** → ***Settings*** → Follow onscreen instructions
Register/Cancel Machi-Uta™	***Machi-Uta*** → ***Register/Cancel*** → Follow onscreen instructions
View Instruction for Machi-Uta™	***Machi-Uta*** → ***What's Machi-Uta***
Set Vibration **Default** Off	***Vibration*** → Select an item → Select a pattern • Press ✉ (Play) to view a pattern.
Set Phone Sounds **Default** Off	***Phone sounds*** → ***Keypad tones*** → Select item
Set System Sounds **Default** Popup box alerts/Call end tone/Alerts on call: On, Minute minder/Call connect tone/Power on/Power off/Open/Close folder: Off	***Phone sounds*** → ***System sounds*** → Check items → ✉ (Save) • Available items vary depending on mode.

• Open ***Sound settings*** to change sounds for Normal mode. Settings cannot be changed for other modes.

External Light Settings

Start Here ■ → *Settings* → *Sound settings* → *External light*

Set External Light Color for Incoming Transmissions Default Voice call/Video call/Missed call notification: Pattern4, Message/Delivery report: Pattern1, S! Quick News: Pattern3, Alarm: Pattern2	*Incoming* → Select an item → Select a color • When selecting *Off*, Notification light does not blink. • Press ✉ (Check) to blink a light.
Set External Light Color for Notification Default Missed call/Missed call notification: Pattern 4, Message/Answering Machine: Pattern 3, Missed alarm: Pattern 2, Delivery report: Pattern1	*Notification* → Select an item → Select a color • When selecting *Off*, Notification light does not blink. • Press ✉ (Check) to view color.
Set External Light Color When Handset is Closed Default Pattern 2	*Close folder* → Select an item • When selecting *Off*, Notification light does not blink. • Press ✉ (Check) to view color.

Display & Font Settings

Start Here ■ → *Settings* → *Display settings*

Change Wallpaper Default Macaroon	*Wallpaper* → (P.2-5 Wallpaper 2)
Set/Cancel Smart Wallpaper Default On	*Smart wallpaper* → *On/Off* → *On* or *Off*
Change Wallpaper for Smart Wallpaper Default St.Valentine's day: Valentine's day, Girl's day: Girl's day, White day: White day, Mother's day: Mother's day, Father's day: Father's day, Halloween: Halloween, Christmas: Christmas	*Smart wallpaper* → *Wallpapers* → Select Wallpaper
Change Main Menu Settings Default Neon Block	*Main menu style* → Select an item → Select a color → ■ (Select)
Set the Color Theme for Menu Default Blue & Black	*Color theme* → Select an item • To use customized color theme, select *Color theme* → Highlight *Customize* → ✉ (Edit) → Highlight background color → ■ (Next) → Highlight title color → ■ (Next) → Highlight focus color → ■ (Save)

Change Clock/Calendar	Default Digital clock	***Clock/Calendar*** → Select an item • If ***Digital clock*** is selected, in Style field, select style → In Position field, select position → ■ (Save). • If ***Dual clock*** is selected, in First clock field, select time zone → In Second clock field, select time zone → ■ (Save). • If ***Calender (1 month)*** is selected, select ***Large***/***Small***.
Set Mini Clock	Default Time only	***Mini clock*** → Select an item
Set Font Type	Default Regular	***Font*** → ***Font weight*** → Select an item
Set Text Size in List Font	Default Standard	***Font*** → ***Font size*** → ***List font*** → Select item
Set Text Size in Yahoo! Keitai Pages	Default Standard	***Font*** → ***Font size*** → ***Yahoo! Keitai*** → Select an item
Set Text Size in PC Site Browser	Default Standard	***Font*** → ***Font size*** → ***PC site browser*** → Select an item
Set Text Size in Phone Book	Default Standard	***Font*** → ***Font size*** → ***Phonebook*** → Select item
Set Text Size in Editor	Default Standard	***Font*** → ***Font size*** → ***Editor*** → Select item
Change Message Text Font Size	Default Standard	***Font*** → ***Font size*** → ***Messages*** → Select an item
Change Text Scroll Speed for Menu List	Default Normal	***Text scroll speed*** → ***Fast***/***Normal***/***Slow***
Adjust Display Brightness	Default Level 3	***Backlight*** → ***Brightness*** → ◙ to adjust brightness → ■ (OK)
Set Backlight Time	Default 15 seconds	***Backlight*** → ***Duration*** → ***Backlight on*** → Select an item • When Backlight time is set to ***Off***, Display becomes dim. • Display becomes dimmer when Backlight time elapses.
Set Backlight Dimmer Time	Default 15 seconds	***Backlight*** → ***Duration*** → ***Backlight dim*** → Select an item • When Backlight time elapses, Display turns off.
Set Battery Saving Mode	Default On	***Battery saving mode*** → ***On*** or ***Off***
Set Text Type in Dialling Display	Default Normal	***Dialling display*** → ***Font type*** → Select an item
Set Text Size in Dialling Display	Default Standard	***Dialling display*** → ***Font size*** → Select an item
Set Text Color in Dialling Display	Default Basic	***Dialling display*** → ***Font color*** → Select an item • If ***Monochrome*** is selected in Color field, select color.

Set Background Color in Dialling Display	***Dialling display*** → ***Background color*** → Select an item
Set Operator Name **Default** Off	***Operator name*** → ***On*** or ***Off***

Manner Mode Settings

Switch Manner Mode	■ → ***Settings*** → ***Manner mode settings*** → Select an item • To edit each setting in Manner mode, highlight mode → ✉ (Edit) → Set each item.

Call Settings

Start Here ■ → ***Settings*** → ***Call settings***

Forward All Calls to Voicemail (Handset Does Not Ring)	***Optional services*** → ***Voice mail/Call forwarding*** → ***Voice mail on*** → ***Always (0 sec.)***
Forward Unanswered Calls to Voicemail (Specify Ring Time)	***Optional services*** → ***Voice mail/Call forwarding*** → ***Voice mail on*** → ***No reply (5 - 30 sec.)***
Activate & Set Forwarding	***Optional services*** → ***Voice mail/Call forwarding*** → ***Call forwarding on*** → Select a call type → Select a setting → Select an item → Set number to forward
Cancel Voicemail/Call Forwarding	***Optional services*** → ***Voice mail/Call forwarding*** → ***Deactivate All*** → ***Yes***
Confirm Current Voicemail/Call Forwarding Settings	***Optional services*** → ***Voice mail/Call forwarding*** → ***Get status***
Listen to Voicemail Message	***Optional services*** → ***Voice mail/Call forwarding*** → ***Call voice mail*** → ☎ or ■ (📞)
Activate/Cancel Call Waiting	***Optional services*** → ***Call waiting*** → ***On*** or ***Off***
Confirm Current Call Waiting Settings	***Optional services*** → ***Call waiting*** → ***Get status***
Activate/Cancel Outgoing Call Barring	***Optional services*** → ***Call barring*** → ***Outgoing call*** → Select an item → ***On*** or ***Off*** → Enter Network Password → ■ (OK)

Activate/Cancel Incoming Call Barring	***Optional services*** → ***Call barring*** → ***Incoming call*** → Select an item → ***On*** or ***Off*** → Enter Network Password → ■ (OK)
Cancel All Call Barring	***Optional services*** → ***Call barring*** → ***Cancel all barring*** → Enter Network Password → ■ (OK) → ***Yes***
Confirm Current Call Barring Settings	***Optional services*** → ***Call barring*** → ***Get status*** → Select an item
Set Missed Call Notification	***Optional services*** → ***Missed call notification*** → ✆ or ✉ ( )
Check Call Time/Cost	***Call time & cost*** → ***All calls*** • To reset call time/cost, press ✉ (Reset) → Enter PIN2 → ■ (OK).
Check Last Call Time/Cost	***Call time & cost*** → ***Last call*** • To reset last call time/cost, press ✉ (Reset).
Check Data Counter	***Call time & cost*** → ***Data counter*** • To reset sent/received data counter, press ✉ (Reset).
Show/Hide Call Time/Cost after Calls **Default** Off	***Call time & cost*** → ***Show charge after call*** → ***On*** or ***Off*** • This function may not be available.
Change Call Cost Currency	***Call time & cost*** → ***Set currency*** → Enter PIN2 → ■ (OK) → In Price field, enter rate in yen → In Currency field, enter currency unit → ✉ (Save)
Set Call Cost Limit	***Call time & cost*** → ***Set max cost limit*** → ■ (Edit) → Enter PIN2 → ■ (OK) → In New upper limit (YEN) field, enter upper limit → ✉ (Save) • After reaching the Call Cost Limit, only emergency calls can be placed; messaging, web connections (fee-based operations) are disabled. • When ***Show charge after call*** is not available, this function is also unavailable.
Cancel Call Cost Limit	***Call time & cost*** → ***Set max cost limit*** → Y! (Reset) → Enter PIN2 → ■ (OK)
Activate/Cancel Answering Machine **Default** Off	***Answering machine*** → ***On/Off*** → ***On*** or ***Off***
Set Answering Machine Response Time **Default** 18seconds	***Answering machine*** → ***Ringing duration*** → Select an item • If ***Other*** is selected, enter time.
Play Answering Machine Records	***Answering machine*** → ***Play answering machine*** → Select a record • To delete record, in list, highlight record → ✉ (Delete) → ***Yes***. • Alternatively, press ✆ → ***All*** → Select a record → ✉ ( ) → Message.

Set Answering Machine Response Language **Default** 日本語	***Answering machine*** → ***Sound language*** → Select an item • Press ✉ (Play) to play message.
Set Preset Picture as Outgoing Image	***Video call*** → ***Alternative picture*** → ***Preset picture*** → ● (Set)
Set Alternative Picture as Outgoing Image	***Video call*** → ***Alternative picture*** → ***Pictures*** → Select a file → ● (Set) • When Memory Card is inserted, ***Digital camera*** is selectable.
Adjust Incoming Video Quality **Default** Standard	***Video call*** → ***Incoming video quality*** → Select an item
Adjust Outgoing Video Quality **Default** Standard	***Video call*** → ***Outgoing video quality*** → Select an item
Set Preset Picture to Appear When Video Call is on Hold	***Video call*** → ***Hold settings*** → ***Hold during call*** → ***Preset picture*** → ● (Set)
Set Hold Setting	***Video call*** → ***Hold settings*** → ***Hold during call*** → ***Pictures*** → Select a file → ● (Set) • When Memory Card is inserted, Digital camera is selectable.
Set Preset Picture to Appear When Video Call is on Hold without Answering	***Video call*** → ***Hold settings*** → ***Hold answer*** → ***Preset picture*** → ● (Set)
Set Hold Answer Setting	***Video call*** → ***Hold settings*** → ***Hold answer*** → ***Pictures*** → Select a file → ● (Set) • When Memory Card is inserted, Digital camera is selectable.
Activate/Cancel Mute for Video Call **Default** Off	***Video call*** → ***Mute my voice*** → ***On*** or ***Off*** • If ***On***, press ✉ (Unmute) to temporarily send voice.
Activate/Cancel Speakerphone during Video Call **Default** On	***Video call*** → ***Speaker*** → ***On*** or ***Off***
Set Backlight **Default** On	***Video call*** → ***Backlight*** → ***On*** or ***Off*** • When ***Off*** is set, Display becomes dim.
Set Handset Response When Video Call Cannot be Connected **Default** Always ask	***Video call*** → ***Retry with*** → Select an item • ***None***: Calls are disconnected with no notification. • When a Video Call cannot be connected, prompt appears to retry with the selected setting.
Answer Video Call from Specified Party Automatically **Default** Off	***Video call*** → ***Auto answer*** → ***On/Off*** → ***On*** or ***Off*** • When a Video Call arrives from the specified party, a tone sounds and the call is automatically answered.

Create Auto Answer List	***Video call*** → ***Auto answer*** → ***Auto answer list*** → ● (Add) → ***Phonebook***/***Call log***/***Direct input*** → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → Add an entry • To delete the selected party, after selecting ***Auto answer list***, highlight party → ⊡ (Delete) → ***Selected*** → ***Yes***. • To delete multiple parties, select ***Auto answer list*** → ⊡ (Delete) → ***Multiple*** → Check parties → ✉ (Delete) → ***Yes***. • To delete all parties, select ***Auto answer list*** → ⊡ (Delete) → ***All*** → ***Yes*** → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK).
Show/Hide Your Own Image for Video Calls **Default** On	***Video call*** → ***Show my image*** → ***On*** or ***Off***
Accept/Reject Calls from Specified Phone Numbers **Default** Off	***Reject incoming calls*** → ***Set reject number*** → ***On/Off*** → ***On*** or ***Off*** • When a call on the Black list is received, the caller hears a busy tone and call is not connected. ***Missed call*** appears in Standby. Select the message to check missed call.
Create/Edit Black List	***Reject incoming calls*** → ***Set reject number*** → ***Black list*** → ⊡ → ***Add*** → Select an item → Add an entry • To delete a phone number, select ***Black list*** → Highlight party → ⊡ → ***Delete*** → ***Selected*** → ***Yes***. • To delete all phone numbers, select ***Black list*** → ⊡ → ***Delete*** → ***All*** → ***Yes*** → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK).
Accept/Reject Calls from Unknown Numbers **Default** Off	***Reject incoming calls*** → ***Unknown*** → ***On*** or ***Off***
Accept/Reject Calls When Number is Withheld **Default** Off	***Reject incoming calls*** → ***Withheld*** → ***On*** or ***Off***
Accept/Reject Calls from Payphones **Default** Off	***Reject incoming calls*** → ***Payphone*** → ***On*** or ***Off***
Accept/Reject Calls When Number is Unavailable **Default** Off	***Reject incoming calls*** → ***Unavailable*** → ***On*** or ***Off***
Save International Code **Default** 0046010	***International call*** → ***International code*** → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → Enter an international code
Add/Change/Delete Country Number **Default** 日本 (Japan), 韓国 (KOR), イギリス (GBR), イタリア (ITA), スイス (CHE), スペイン (ESP), ドイツ (DEU), ポルトガル (PRT), オランダ (NLD), フランス (FRA), モナコ (MCO), アメリカ合衆国 (USA), スウェーデン (SWE), オーストラリア (AUS), 中国 (CHN), 香港 (HKG), 台湾 (TWN)	***International call*** → ***Country number*** → Add, change, or delete item • To add, press ✉ (Add) → ***Country name*** → Enter country name → ***Country code*** → Enter country code → ✉ (Save). • To change, select an item from country code → ***Country name*** → Enter country name → ***Country code*** → Enter country code → ✉ (Save). • To delete, highlight item → ⊡ (Delete) → ***Yes***.

Select Network to Access **Default** Automatic	***International call*** → ***Select operator*** → ***Select Automatic/Manual*** → Select an item • When you set ***Manual***, select a network.
Select Preferred Network from List	***International call*** → ***Select operator*** → ***Set priority*** → [Y!] → ***Insert*** → ***Network list*** → Select a network
Add a New Preferred Network	***International call*** → ***Select operator*** → ***Set priority*** → [Y!] → ***Insert*** → ***New Network*** → In Country code field, enter country code → In Network code field, enter Network code → In Network name field, enter Network name → [✉] (Save)
Set Roaming Dial Assistant **Default** On	***International call*** → ***Roaming dial assistant*** → ***On*** or ***Off*** • If ***Roaming dial assistant*** is set to ***On***, popup appears while dialing. If you add international number before phone number, popup does not appear.
Activate/Cancel Offline Mode **Default** Off	***Offline*** → ***On*** or ***Off***
Show/Hide Your Own Number	***Show my number*** → ***On*** or ***Off*** • To check current status, select ***Get status***.
Set Handset to Automatically Redial Busy Numbers **Default** Off	***Auto redial*** → ***On*** or ***Off*** • ***On***: Handset automatically disconnects call and redials busy numbers. Auto redial dials up to ten times until [Y!] (Cancel) / [⏻] is pressed. • Auto redial setting takes priority when Video Call retry setting is selected. • If called party uses Call Forwarding or Voicemail, call is forwarded accordingly.
Activate/Cancel Automatic Ringer Reduction **Default** On	***Ringtone reducer*** → ***On*** or ***Off*** • When Ringtone volume level is high, the volume level is reduced to Level 1 for the first four seconds, then returns to the set level.
Enable/Disable Calling via Stereo Earphone Microphone **Default** Off	***Earphone call*** → ***On/Off*** → ***On*** or ***Off*** → ***Call number*** → Select an item → Add a phone number • ***On***: Press Stereo Earphone Microphone (optional) switch for 1 + seconds to call specified number. To change specified number, repeat setup operation, to save the new number.
Adjust Earpiece Volume **Default** Level 3	***Hearing volume*** → [◀▶] to adjust volume

Phone Book Settings

Start Here ■ → *Phone* → *Settings*

Select Phone Book Save Location — Default: Phone	*Save to* → Select an item • *Always ask*: A confirmation appears each time a new entry is saved.
Change Phone Book Preference (Phone/USIM) — Default: Phone	*Change view* → Select an item
Change Search Method — Default: ABC	*Search method* → Select an item
Set Font Size — Default: Standard	*Font size* → Select item
Copy All Phone Book Entries & Save on Handset & USIM Card	*Copy all* → *Phone to USIM*/*USIM to Phone* → *Yes*

Messaging Settings

Custom Mail Address

Customize/Change Handset Mail Address	✉ → *Settings* → *Custom mail address* → Follow onscreen instructions • Change mail account name (alphanumerics before @). Default: Account name consists of random alphanumerics.

S! Mail & SMS

Start Here ✉ → *Settings* → *Universal settings*

Request/Cancel Delivery Report — Default: Off	*Sending settings* → *Delivery report* → *On* or *Off* • *On*: Receive a message confirming successful delivery of a sent message.
Quote Text From Received Message — Default: On (Except SMS & Graphic mail)	*Sending settings* → *Reply with history* → Select an item
Select Reply Setting — Default: Off	*Sending settings* → *Reply settings* → *On* or *Off* *On*: Replies to sent messages are automatically addressed to *"Reply to" address* *Off*: Replies to sent messages are addressed to handset number/mail address • Set address that appears in To: field of message recipient handset.

Set "Reply to" Address	***Sending settings*** → ***"Reply to" address*** → Enter an item → Enter address
Change Quick Reply Message	***Sending settings*** → ***Quick reply setting*** → Select items → Enter message
Show/Hide Transmission Progress Bar **Default** On	***Sending settings*** → ***Sending progress*** → ***On*** or ***Off***
Set Received Message Notice Content/Hide Notice **Default** From	***Receiving settings*** → ***Message notice*** → ***View setting*** → Select an item • Received message notice scrolls above active function windows.
Select Secret Folder Message Notice Setting **Default** Show	***Receiving settings*** → ***Message notice*** → ***Secret folder*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → Select an item • ***Not show***: Incoming message notice window for messages sorted to secret folders or ***Message notice*** does not appear.
Link External Light to Incoming Feeling Mail **Default** On	***Receiving settings*** → ***Link to feeling*** → ***Light color*** → ***On/Off*** → ***On*** or ***Off***
Link External Light Color to Incoming Feeling Mail **Default** Happy/Glad: Pattern 1, OK/Good: Pattern 3, Sad/Sorry: Pattern 4, NG/Bad/Important/Notice: Pattern 2	***Receiving settings*** → ***Link to feeling*** → ***Light color*** → ***Light color*** → Select a feeling → Select a pattern • Press ✉ (Check) to view color.
Link Vibration to Incoming Feeling Mail **Default** On	***Receiving settings*** → ***Link to feeling*** → ***Vibration pattern*** → Select an item
Set Whether to Sound Handset When Feeling Mail Arrives **Default** Off	***Receiving settings*** → ***Link to feeling*** → ***Ringtone*** → ***On/Off*** → ***On*** or ***Off***
Link Ringtone to Incoming Feeling Mail **Default** Happy/Glad: One Fine Day, OK/Good: Sunny day, Sad/Sorry: Jazzy House_Pleasure, NG/Bad: Vintage Cinema, Important/Notice: On my way home	***Receiving settings*** → ***Link to feeling*** → ***Ringtone*** → ***Assign tone*** → Select a feeling → Select a save location → Select a Ringtone • Press ✉ (Play) to playback the file.
Set Feeling Mail Ringtone Duration **Default** 5 Seconds	***Receiving settings*** → ***Link to feeling*** → ***Ringtone*** → ***Duration*** → Enter time → ■ (OK)
Change Font Size **Default** Standard	***Display settings*** → ***Font size*** → Select an item
Change Scroll Unit **Default** Single line	***Display settings*** → ***Scroll unit*** → Select an item
Change Received Message View **Default** Folder view	***Display settings*** → ***Received msg. view*** → Select an item
Change Sent Message View **Default** Folder view	***Display settings*** → ***Sent msg. view*** → Select an item

Set/Cancel Auto Delete for Received Messages When Received Memory is Full **Default** On (Except protected)	***Auto delete*** → ***Received msg.*** → Select an item ***On (Except protected)*** : Unprotected messages are automatically deleted oldest first to make room for new ones. If ***Auto delete*** is ***Off***, memory full confirmation appears. Delete messages and retry. ***On (Only read)*** : Unprotected messages are automatically deleted from the oldest one to make room for new ones. If ***Auto delete*** is ***Off***, memory full confirmation appears. Delete messages and retry. ***Off***: Memory full confirmation appears. Delete messages and retry.
Set/Cancel Auto Delete for Sent Messages When Sent Memory is Full **Default** On (Except protected)	***Auto delete*** → ***Sent msg.*** → Select an item ***On (Except protected)*** : Unprotected messages are automatically deleted oldest first to make room for new ones. If ***Auto delete*** is ***Off***, memory full confirmation appears. Delete messages and retry. ***Off***: Memory full confirmation appears. Delete messages and retry.
Sort Unregistered Mobile Address as Spam **Default** Off	***Anti-spam measures*** → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → ***Unregistered*** → ***On***
Sort Message with Spam Filter **Default** Off	***Anti-spam measures*** → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → ***Unregistered*** → ***On*** • To specify list, ***Spam filter*** → ✉ (Edit) → (If address already exists in the list, ✉ → ***Add filter***) → ***Sender***/***Sender (Partial match)***/***Subject***.
Add Address to Permitted List **Default** Off	***Anti-spam measures*** → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → ***Permitted list*** → ***On*** • To specify list, ***Permitted list*** → ✉ (Edit) → (If address already exists in the list, ✉ → ***Add filter***) → ***Sender***/***Sender (Partial match)***/***Subject***. • Available only when ***Unregistered***/***Spam filter*** is ***On***.
Set Address for Report Spam **Default** stop@meiwaku.softbankmobile.co.jp	***Anti-spam measures*** → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → ***Address for report spam*** → Enter mail address → ● (OK) → ***Yes***
Select Save Location for Message **Default** Memory card prior	***Save to*** → Select an item • If ***Always ask*** is selected, confirmation appears each time a message item is saved.

S! Mail

Start Here ✉ → ***Settings*** → ***S! Mail settings***

Set Max Creation Size	Default 2MB	***Sending options*** → ***Max creation size*** → Select an item • In S! Mail creation window, press Y! → ***Sending options*** → ***Max creation size*** can change maximum size temporarily.
Set Message Sending Priority	Default Normal	***Sending options*** → ***Priority*** → Select an item
Set Picture Auto Resize	Default 500KB	***Sending options*** → ***Picture auto resize*** → Select item
Set Max Receiving Size	Default 2MB	***Receiving options*** → ***Max receiving size*** → ***2MB/300KB***
Set S! Mail Receiving Options	Default On (Up to 1MB)	***Receiving options*** → ***Auto receiving*** → Select an item ***On (Up to 1MB)*** : Receives maximum 1 MB automatically. ***On (Up to 300KB)*** : Receives maximum 300 KB automatically. ***Off***: Mail Service Center sends S! Mail Notice; retrieve complete message.
Set Auto Receiving Condition	Default All messages	***Receiving options*** → ***Auto receiving conditions*** → ***Al messages/Specified address***
Edit Auto Receiving Condition		***Receiving options*** → ***Auto receiving conditions*** → ✉ (Edit) → Check item → ■ (OK) • If Individual address is checked, press ✉ (Edit) → Y! → ***Add*** → Select item → Select/Enter address → ✉ (OK).
Insert/Hide Signature	Default Off	***Signature*** → ***Auto insert*** → Select an item • In ***Signature texts*** field, enter signature.
Edit Signature		***Signature*** → ***Signature texts*** → Enter a signature
Set Attached Image Appearance	Default Normal	***Picture appearance*** → Select an item
Set Attached Image Auto Playback	Default On	***Auto play file*** → ***Picture*** → ***On*** or ***Off***
Set Attached Sound Auto Playback	Default Off	***Auto play file*** → ***Sound*** → ***On*** or ***Off***

SMS

Start Here ✉ → *Settings* → *SMS settings*

Set Mail Service Center Message Expiry Time — Default: None	***Expiry time*** → Select an item • Upon expiry Mail Service Center SMS messages are automatically deleted.
Set Message Center Number — Default: Setting 1 +819066519300	***Message center*** → Select an item
Change Character Code — Default: Unicode	***Char-code*** → Select an item

Internet Settings

Yahoo! Keitai

Start Here ■ → *Yahoo!* → *Browser settings*

Change Page Font Size — Default: Standard	***Font size*** → Select an item
Set Encoding — Default: Auto	***Encoding*** → Select item
Set Page Scroll Unit — Default: Single line	***Scroll unit*** → Select an item
Show/Hide Page Images — Default: Show images	***Downloads*** → ***Images*** → Select item • Select ***Do not show*** to help reduce download time.
Play/Mute Page Sounds — Default: Play sounds	***Downloads*** → ***Sounds*** → Select item • Select ***Do not play*** to help reduce download time.
Set Save Location for Images in a Page, etc. — Default: Memory card prior	***Save to*** → ***Memory card prior***/***Phone***/***Always ask*** • To save a file to Memory Card, insert Memory Card and select ***Memory card prior***.
Delete Cache/Cookie/Certificates	***Memory manager*** → Select an item → ***Yes***
Show/Hide Manufacture Number — Default: On	***Security*** → ***Manufacture number*** → ***On*** or ***Off*** • ***On***: Handset automatically sends Manufacture Number to websites upon request as user ID.
Send/Hide Referrer — Default: Send	***Security*** → ***Send referer*** → Select an item • Referrer is a link source URL information. It is sent to Web server when accessing websites.

Select Cookie Setting **Default** Enabled	***Security*** → ***Cookies*** → Select an item • Select ***Confirm*** to show for acceptance confirmation every time before a cookie is saved. • Cookie automatically saves identification information of visitors to handset. Cookies contain user information and allow sites to recognize users and track preferences.
Confirm Root Certificate	***Security*** → ***Root certificates*** → Select a certificate • View electronic certificate preinstalled on handset.
Set Certificate Retention Period **Default** Per browsing	***Security*** → ***Certificate retention*** → Select an item
Initialize Browser	***Initialized browser*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → ***Yes*** • Initialize browser settings or information such as Bookmarks or Saved pages.
Reset Settings	***Reset settings*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → ***Yes***

PC Site Browser

Start Here ■ → ***Yahoo!*** → ***PC site browser*** → ***PC site browser settings***

Change Page Font Size **Default** Standard	***Font size*** → Select an item
Set Encoding **Default** Auto	***Encoding*** → Select item
Set Scroll Unit **Default** Single line	***Scroll unit*** → Select item
Show/Hide Page Images **Default** Show images	***Downloads*** → ***Images*** → Select item • Select ***Do not show*** to help reduce download time.
Play/Mute Page Sounds **Default** Play sounds	***Downloads*** → ***Sounds*** → Select item • Select ***Do not play*** to help reduce download time.
Set Save Location for Images in a Page, etc. **Default** Memory card prior	***Save to*** → ***Memory card prior***/***Phone***/***Always ask*** • To save a file to Memory Card, insert Memory Card and select ***Memory card prior***.
Delete Cache/Cookie/Certificates	***Memory manager*** → Select an item → ***Yes***
Show/Hide Manufacture Number **Default** On	***Security*** → ***Manufacture number*** → ***On*** or ***Off*** • ***On***: Handset automatically sends Manufacture Number to websites upon request as user ID.
Send/Hide Referrer **Default** Send	***Security*** → ***Send referer*** → Select an item • Referrer is a link source URL information. It is sent to Web server when accessing websites.

Select Cookie Setting **Default** Enabled	***Security*** → ***Cookies*** → Select an item • Select ***Confirm*** to show acceptance confirmation every time before Cookie is saved. • Cookie automatically saves identification information of visitors to handset. Cookies contain user information and allow sites to recognize users and track preferences.
Select Script Setting **Default** On	***Security*** → ***Script*** → Select an item
Confirm Root Certificate	***Security*** → ***Root certificates*** → Select a certificate • View electronic certificate preinstalled on handset.
Set Certificate Retention Period **Default** Per browsing	***Security*** → ***Certificate retention*** → Select an item
Show/Hide Warning **Default** On	***Warning messages*** → ***On*** or ***Off*** • Show or hide PC Site Browser activation, or Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser switching warning.
Initialize Browser	***Initialized browser*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → ***Yes*** • Initialize browser settings or information such as Bookmarks or Saved pages.
Reset Settings	***Reset settings*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → ***Yes***

Digital TV Settings

TV Alarm

Start Here ■ → ***TV*** → ***Settings*** → ***TV alarm***

Set Alarm **Default** On	***Alarm*** → ***On*** or ***Off***
Set Alert Tone **Default** Samsung Tune.mp4	***Alert tone*** → Select a save location → Select a file • Press ✉ (Play) to playback.
Set Volume **Default** Level 3	***Volume*** → ◀▶ to adjust volume • Press ✉ (Play) to confirm volume setting.
Set Vibration **Default** Off	***Vibration*** → Select an item • Press ✉ (Play) to view a pattern.
Set Notification Light **Default** On	***Light*** → ***On*** or ***Off***

Set Reminder Time **Default** 1 minute before	***Reminder time*** → Select an item
Set Alarm Duration **Default** 10 seconds	***Duration*** → Select an item
Set Alarm Sound/Vibration in Manner Mode **Default** Alarm sound:Off, Vibration:On	***Manner mode setting*** → ***Alarm sound/Vibration*** → ***On*** or ***Off***

Data Broadcast

Start Here ■ → ***TV*** → ***Settings*** → ***Set broadcast data***

Set Recording Type **Default** Image+Text	***Set recording*** → Select an item
Select Save Location **Default** Memory card prior	***Image location*** → Select an item
Select Connection Notification Type **Default** Ask each time	***Notify connection*** → Select an item
Show/Hide Manufacture Number **Default** On	***Manufacture number*** → ***On*** or ***Off***
Delete Station Data	***Delete station data*** → Highlight item → Y! → ***Delete*** → ***Yes*** • To delete all stations, press Y! → ***Delete all*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → ***Yes***.

Display & Sound

Start Here ■ → ***TV*** → ***Settings***

Show/Hide Indicators in Landscape View **Default** Off	***Display*** → ***Display pict*** → ***On*** or ***Off***
Set Whether to Show Videos in Landscape View **Default** Normal	***Display*** → ***Landscape style*** → Select an item
Set Whether to Show Videos in Portrait View **Default** Normal	***Display*** → ***Portrait style*** → Select an item
Adjust Display Brightness **Default** Level 3	***Display*** → ***Display brightness*** → ◙ to adjust brightness
Set View Mode When TV is Activated **Default** Landscape	***Display*** → ***First view*** → ***Landscape/Portrait***
Adjust Sound Quality **Default** Standard	***Sound*** → ***Sound mode*** → Select an item
Select Language **Default** Main	***Sound*** → ***Sound language*** → Select an item

Recording

Set Save Location	**Default** Memory card prior	■ → *TV* → *Settings* → *Save recording to* → Select an item

Incoming Calls & Alarms

Handle Incoming Calls & Alarms **Default** Voice call/Video call: Call priority, Alarms: Alarm priority	■ → *TV* → *Settings* → *Calls & Alarms* → Select an item → Select action • When *Call priority* or *Alarm priority* is set, TV window pauses temporarily and Incoming call window or Alarm window appears. • When *Notice a call* or *Alarm notice* is set, a notification appears at top of Display and handset vibrates (TV reception continues). Press ☎ to accept a call; press ☎ to hold a call.

Auto Power Off

Start Here ■ → *TV* → *Settings* → *Auto power off*

End TV after Setting Duration	**Default** Off	*Auto power off* → Select an item
End TV after Phone Closed	**Default** On	*Phone closing* → *On* or *Off*

Camera Settings

Photo

Start Here ■ → *Camera* → *Camera* → ▽ → 🔧 → *Settings*

Select Quality	**Default** Superfine	*Quality* → Select an item
Set ISO	**Default** Auto	*ISO* → Select an item
Set Exposure Metering	**Default** Center-weight	*Exposure metering* → Select an item
Select Effect	**Default** None	*Effect* → Select item

Activate/Cancel Auto Save **Default** On (Preview manual)	***Setup → Auto save → On (Preview off)/On (2 sec)/On (Preview manual)/Off*** • ***On (Preview off)*** : Image is automatically saved. After saving, handset returns to Viewfinder without showing preview. • ***On (2 sec)*** : Image is automatically saved. After saving, preview appears for two seconds, and handset returns to Viewfinder. • ***On (Preview manual)*** : After capturing, image is automatically saved and preview appears. • ***Off*** : Select save or cancel the image. To redo, press (CLEAR). To save, press ■ (Save).
Set Save Location When Memory Card is Inserted **Default** Memory card prior	***Setup → Save to →*** Select an item • This setting is active with Memory Card inserted. • If Memory Card is not inserted, images are automatically saved to ***Phone***.
Show/Hide Guideline **Default** Off	***Setup → Guideline → On*** or ***Off***
Set Face Link Display **Default** Off	***Setup → Face link display → On*** or ***Off*** • When you set this ***On***, after the face you captured is recognized, the name linked to Face Link appears.
Set Shutter Sound **Default** Pattern1	***Setup → Shutter sound →*** Select an item
Set Timer Sound **Default** Pattern1	***Setup → Timer sound →*** Select an item

Video

Start Here ■ → ***Camera → Video camera →*** (Y!) → 🔧 → ***Settings***

Select Quality **Default** Superfine	***Quality →*** Select an item
Set Effect **Default** None	***Effect →*** Select item
Set Sound Recording **Default** On	***Sound recording → On*** or ***Off***
Activate/Cancel Auto Save **Default** On	***Setup → Auto save → On*** or ***Off***
Set Save Location **Default** Memory card prior	***Setup → Save to →*** Select item • To save a file to Memory Card, insert Memory Card.
Show/Hide Guideline **Default** Off	***Setup → Guideline → On*** or ***Off***
Set Shutter Sound **Default** Pattern1	***Setup → Shutter sound →*** Select an item
Set Timer Sound **Default** Pattern1	***Setup → Timer sound →*** Select an item

Media Player Settings

Music

Start Here ■ → *Media* → *Settings* → *Music settings*

Set Repeat Mode	Default All	***Repeat mode*** → Select an item • Play a single track repeatedly, all music, or all files in playlist randomly repeatedly.
Set Shuffle	Default Off	***Shuffle*** → ***On*** or ***Off***
Set Equalizer	Default Off	***Equalizer*** → Select an item
Set 3D Sound	Default Off	***3D sound*** → ***On*** or ***Off***

Movie

Start Here ■ → *Media* → *Settings* → *Movie settings*

Set Repeat Mode	Default All	***Repeat mode*** → Select an item • Play a single file repeatedly, all movies, or all files in playlist repeatedly.
Set Shuffle	Default Off	***Shuffle*** → ***On*** or ***Off***
Set Backlight	Default Always on	***Backlight*** → Select an item
Set Portrait Style	Default 240 * 180	***Display*** → ***Portrait style*** → Select an item
Set Display for Activating Movie	Default Landscape	***Display*** → ***First view*** → Select an item
Show/Hide Movie Preview	Default On	***Display*** → ***Preview*** → ***On*** or ***Off***
Access/Ignore Linked Information	Default On	***Web link*** → ***On*** or ***Off*** • ***On***: After playing a file with linked info, access confirmation appears.

Entertainment Settings

S! Information Channel

Start Here ■ → *Entertainment* → *S! Information Channel/Weather* → *Weather Indicator* → *Settings*

Set Weather Indicator Display Settings	Default On	*Display setting* → *On* or *Off*
Set Weather Indicator Update Notification	Default On	*Missed event setting* → *On* or *Off*
Set Weather Indicator Automatic Update	Default On	*Auto update* → *On* or *Off*

S! Applications

Start Here ■ → *S! Appli* → *Settings*

Set S! Appli Volume	Default Level 3	*Volume* → ⊞ to adjust volume
Adjust Display Backlight Setting	Default Normal settings	*Backlight* → *Always On*/*Always Off*/*Normal settings* • When *Normal settings* is set, *Backlight* settings in *Display settings* is applied.
Set S! Appli Vibration Settings	Default On	*Vibration* → *On* or *Off*
Set Operation of Incoming Call/Alarm/S! Appli Start Request Default Voice call/Video call: Call Priority, Alarms: Alarm priority, Start demand: Start notice		*Calls & Alarms* → Select an item → Select action • When *Call Priority* or *Alarm priority* or *Start priority* is set, S! Appli pauses temporarily and incoming call, Alarm or Start request window appears. • When *Notice a call*, *Alarm notice* or *Start notice* is set, Call, Alarm or Start request notification appears at the top of Display. Press ⌒ to receive a call. Press ☎ to hold a call. • Even when *Notice a call* is set, if Answering machine is *On*, S! Appli pauses and Answering machine activates after the response time.
Reset Settings of S! Appli		*Reset S! Appli settings* → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → *Yes*

Security Settings

Start Here ■ → *Settings* → *Security*

Activate/Cancel Phone Lock	Default Off	*Phone lock* → *On* or *Off* → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK)
Activate/Cancel Password Lock	Default Off	*Password lock* → *On* or *Off* → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK)
Change Phone Password	Default 9999	*Change password* → Enter current password → ■ (OK) → Enter new password → ■ (OK) → Enter new password again → ■ (OK)
Activate/Cancel Function Lock	Default All unlocked	*Function lock* → Check an item → ✉ (Save) → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK)
Activate/Cancel Secret Mode	Default Hide	*Secret mode* → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → Select an item
Activate/Cancel USIM Lock	Default Off	*USIM lock* → *On* or *Off* → Enter USIM Password (four- to eight-digit) → ■ (OK) → Enter USIM Password again as required → ■ (OK)
Activate/Cancel PIN Certification	Default Off	*PIN certification* → *On* or *Off* → Enter PIN → ■ (OK)
Change PIN		*Change PIN* → Enter current PIN → ■ (OK) → Enter new PIN → ■ (OK) → Enter new PIN again → ■ (OK) • To change PIN code, set *PIN certification* to *On*.
Change PIN2		*Change PIN2* → Enter current PIN2 → ■ (OK) → Enter new PIN2 → ■ (OK) → Enter new PIN2 again → ■ (OK)
Set Secret Mode on Sub-folder in Data Folder	Default Hide	*Secret data folder* → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → Select item
Delete Phone Book Entries, Message etc.		*Reset* → *All reset* → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → *Yes*
Restore Settings to Default Values		*Reset* → *Reset settings* → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → *Yes*
Set Mobile Tracker	Default Off	*Mobile tracker* → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → *Activation* → *On* → *Recipients* → Select To field → *Phonebook*/*Direct input* → Search and select entry/Enter phone number → ✉ (Done) → *Sender* → Enter Sender name → ✉ (Save)

Memory Settings

Start Here ■ → ***Settings***

Check Memory Card Details	***Memory settings*** → ***Memory card*** • Check Memory Card name, memory capacity, or remaining memory.
Rename Memory Card	***Memory settings*** → ***Memory card*** → ***Name*** → Enter name
Format Memory Card	***Memory settings*** → ***Memory card*** → ✉ (Format) → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → ***Yes***
Confirm Total/Remaining Phone Memory	***Memory settings*** → ***Phone memory*** • View Phone memory capacity or remaining memory.
Clear Phone Memory	***Memory settings*** → ***Phone memory*** → ✉ (Clear) → Check an item → ✉ (Clear) → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → ***Yes***
View Memory Status	***Memory settings*** → ***Memory status*** → Select an item • If ***Data Folder*** is selected, select ***Phone memory***/***Memory card***. • To delete viewed memory, press ✉ (Delete) (➔P.12-12 Deleting Registered/Saved Data).
Back up Memory	***Backup & Restore*** → ***Backup*** → ***Yes*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → Select an item → ***Yes***
Setting frequency for Auto Back up	***Backup & Restore*** → ***Auto backup*** → ***Backup cycle*** → ***Cycle*** → ***Every week***/***Every month*** → Select day/Enter date → ***Start time*** → Enter start time • After selecting ***Cycle***, select ***Off*** to cancel Auto back up.
Setting Item to Back up Automatically **Default** All	***Backup & Restore*** → ***Auto backup*** → ***Backup items*** → Check items → ✉ (Save)
Setting Encryption for Items to Back up Automatically **Default** On	***Backup & Restore*** → ***Auto backup*** → ***Encryption settings*** → Select item → ***On*** or ***Off***
Restore Memory	***Backup & Restore*** → ***Restore*** → ***Yes*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → ***Selected item*** → Select item → Select a file → ***Add*** or ***Overwrite***

Set Default Memory to Phone/Memory Card **Default** Memory card prior	***Connectivity*** → ***Save to*** → Select an item • With Memory Card inserted, select ***Phone*** or ***Memory card prior***. Available when editing images, saving S! Mail attachments, downloading files, etc. • Even when ***Always ask*** is selected with no Memory Card inserted, files are automatically saved to handset.

Connectivity Settings

Infrared

Start Here ■ → ***Settings*** → ***Connectivity*** → ***Infrared***

Receive Infrared Transmission	***Receive***
Transfer Account Details	***Transfer my details***
Transfer Files	***Transfer files*** → Select Data Folder → Check files → ✉ (Send)
Transfer All Phone Book Entries, Calendar/Tasks , Bookmarks, Notes or Messages at Once	***Transfer all*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → Select an item → Enter Authorization Code (four-digit) → ■ (OK) • For ***Phonebook***, choose ***Yes*** to transfer images.

USB

Activate Mass Storage	■ → ***Settings*** → ***Connectivity*** → ***Mass storage*** → ***Yes*** → Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK) → Exchange files with PC • You need to connect handset and your PC before this operation.

Network

Start Here ■ → ***Settings*** → ***Network settings***

Retrieve Network Information Manually	***Retrieve NW info*** → ***Yes*** or ***No***
Seek the Most Prioritized Network	***Re-search signal*** → ***Yes*** or ***No***

Appendix

15

Troubleshooting **15-2**

Drying Off Handset **15-5**

Reattaching Port Cover **15-6**

Software Update **15-7**

Function List **15-7**

Main Menu 15-7

Simple Mode Menu 15-9

Default Mode Settings 15-11

Text Entry Window Key Assignments **15-13**

Symbols **15-14**

Double-byte Symbols 15-14

Single-byte Symbols 15-14

Symbol Conversions 15-14

Pictograms **15-15**

Memory **15-16**

Specifications **15-16**

SoftBank 840SC 15-16

Materials & Finishing 15-17

Battery 15-17

Phone Book 15-17

Image Size 15-19

Media Player 15-19

File Type 15-19

Warranty & Service **15-20**

Warranty 15-20

Repair Requests 15-20

Customer Service **15-32**

Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Handset does not turn on	Is battery empty?	Replace or charge battery.
	Is battery installed in handset?	Install battery correctly.
When power is turned on, PIN entry window appears	Is ***PIN certification*** set to ***On***?	If ***PIN certification*** is ***On***, enter PIN.
When power is turned on, USIM Password entry window appears	Is ***USIM lock*** set to ***On***?	If ***USIM lock*** is ***On***, enter USIM Password.
Please insert USIM card, ***Incorrect USIM*** **or** ***USIM card failed*** **appears when handset is turned on or executing a function**	Is USIM Card correctly installed?	Check to see if USIM Card is correctly installed.If the message appears even though USIM Card is correctly installed, it may be damaged.
	Is USIM Card still being loaded?	Try again after a while.
	Is an incorrect USIM Card being used?	Check to see if correct USIM Card is being used.Use USIM Card specified by SoftBank.
	Are there foreign particles on USIM Card IC chip?	Remove foreign particles with a clean, dry cloth, and then install USIM Card correctly.
圏外 or OUT appears and no calls can be placed	Handset is out-of-range.	Move to a place where the signal is stronger and try again.
Calls are interrupted or disconnected	Does 圏外 or OUT appear?	Move to a place where the signal is stronger and try again.
	Is battery empty?	Replace or charge battery.

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Unable to place a call	Is Call Barring set?	Deactivate Call Barring.
	Is ***Offline mode*** set to ***On***? (appears)	Set ***Offline mode*** to ***Off***.
Unable to open Phone Book entry, Data Folder, Call Log, Calendar, Notepad, Tasks, Yahoo! Keitai, or Messaging	Is ***Function lock*** set?	Cancel ***Function lock***.
Clicking noise is heard during a call	-	Noise may be generated when signal is weak or while moving between coverage areas.
Unable to charge battery	Is AC Charger Connector securely inserted into handset?	Insert AC Charger Connector securely.
	Is AC Charger plug securely inserted?	Insert AC Charger plug securely.
	Is battery installed in handset?	Install battery correctly.
	Are handset terminals and AC Charger clean?	Clean contacts with a dry cotton swab.
	Was battery charged in ambient temperature below 5 °C or above 40 °C?	Charge battery in ambient temperature between 5 °C and 40 °C.
	Battery may need to be replaced.	Install a new battery.
	Does battery always lose its charge quickly after being charged?	Battery life has expired. Replace with a new battery.

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Unable to charge battery	Does handset or battery become very warm during charging?	If the temperature rises too much, charging may stop. After handset and battery are cool, retry charging.
Devices become hot	During charging, AC Charger may heat up.	If handset is safe to touch, heat level is normal. If it is too hot to touch, immediately stop charging and contact Customer Service (➔P.15-31).
	Handset may heat up during charging/long calls.	
Battery drains quickly	Battery may drain quickly depending on the operating environment (ambient temperature, charging conditions, or signal strength), operations, and settings.	Use handset in an appropriate environment and reduce operations requiring high power (➔P.1-6).
Unable to watch TV	Is USIM Card removed?	Unable to watch TV with no USIM Card inserted. Insert USIM Card.
	Is subscription terminated?	TV is enabled only during subscription period.
Display flickers	Is handset being used near fluorescent light?	Use handset as far away from fluorescent light as possible.
Display is dim or unlit	-	This may be due to the characteristics of Display and not a problem. The time until Display is dimmed or unlit can be changed by adjusting the Backlight time.
Unable to play music via speaker	Is ***Manner mode*** set?	Cancel ***Manner mode***.
	Is the Stereo Earphone Microphone connected?	Disconnect the connector for the Stereo Earphone Microphone (optional) from handset.

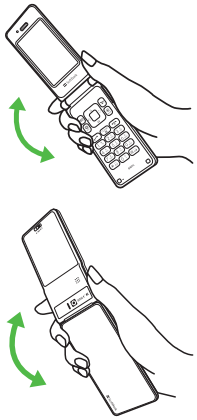
Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Too many applications are already running. **appears**	Too many functions are active.	Close some.
Unable to establish USB connections using Samsung New PC Studio	Is the USB driver installed? (for USB connection)	If communications are executed connecting to a personal computer with USB cable, installing the driver is required. Download USB Driver Installer from SAMSUNG Website (http://jp.samsungmobile.com/pc/lineup/840download.html) and install the driver.
	Is the connection method set correctly on the personal computer?	Set the connection method to ***USB*** on the Connection Manager of Samsung New PC Studio or the Connection Wizard for the communication in use.
	Are PC USB connection port and Samsung New PC Studio the same?	Make sure port settings match those set for Samsung New PC Studio Connection Manager or Connection Wizard.
Phone Book entry, Message folder, schedule event in Calendar, or Tasks do not appear	In ***Security***, is ***Secret mode*** set to ***Hide***?	In ***Security***, set ***Secret mode*** to ***Show***.
	Is ***Secret*** under each function set to ***On***?	Select ***Unlock temporarily*** from ▽ on the window to view information.

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Sub folder does not appear	In ***Security***, is ***Secret data folder*** set to ***Hide***?	In ***Security***, set ***Secret data folder*** to ***Show***.
	Is ***Secret*** under each function set to ***On***?	Select ***Unlock temporarily*** from [Y!] on the window to view information.
Sending message failed **appears**	If send fails, error message and reason appear.	Confirm reason and try again.
Service not allowed **appears**	Handset is outside the service area.	Send from within the service area.
Sending operation cannot be operated in offline mode **appears**	In ***Offline mode***, handset transmissions are disabled.	Set ***Offline mode*** to ***Off*** (➔P.1-11).
Storage space short by ＊＊ bytes. Edit data folder files? **appears**	Handset memory is full.	Delete unnecessary files and try again.
Cannot download. File corrupt. **appears**	-	File cannot be downloaded; cancel download.
Unable to call via Stereo Earphone Microphone (Optional)	Is ***Earphone call*** set to ***Off***?	Even if ***Earphone call*** number is saved, if ***Earphone call*** is set to ***Off*** it will not be dialed. Set ***Earphone call*** to ***On*** (➔P.14-11).

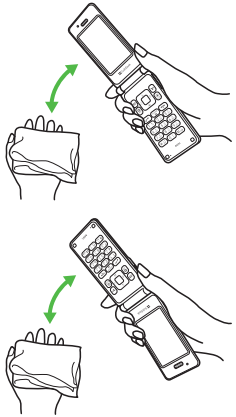
Drying Off Handset

If handset gets wet, follow these steps to dry it:

1. **Wipe handset surface with dry cloth**
2. **Firmly grasp hinges, and shake handset about 20 times**



3. **Pat dry cloth on grooves (Microphone, Earpiece Speaker, etc.) to remove moisture**

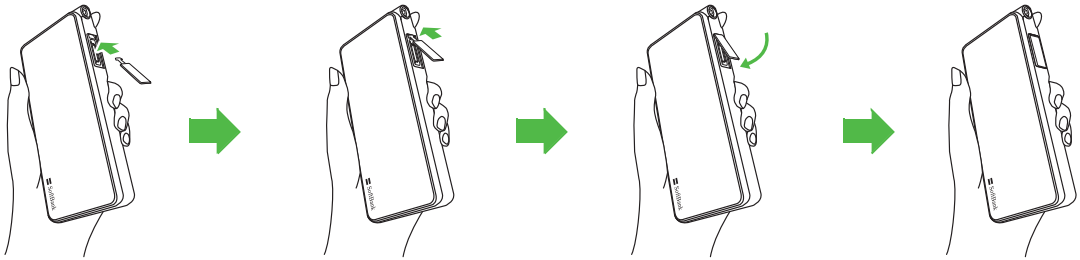


4. **Leave handset for approximately two to three hours at room temperature**

Reattaching Port Cover

If Port Cover becomes detached from handset, follow these steps to reattach it:

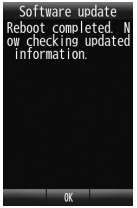
1 Follow steps illustrated below:



Software Update

SoftBank releases firmware updates. Download as required.

1. ▣ → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *Software update*
2. *Software update* → ✉ (YES)
   - Handset connects to network.
3. *Yes*
   - Read ***Terms of Use*** before selecting ***Yes***.
4. ▣ (OK)
   - Update starts. When complete, handset powers off and restarts; notification appears.



- For procedures, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Service.
- Confirming/downloading updates does not incur fees.

Note

- **Charge battery beforehand; if low, update may fail.**
- **If Scheduled Update Time arrives while handset is out-of-range, Software Update is canceled.**
- **Remain within strong, stable signal conditions.**
- **Handset Phone Book entries, media files, and other contents are not affected by software updates, but always back up important information (note that some files cannot be copied). SoftBank Mobile is not liable for damages from lost information, etc.**
- **Handset transmissions are disabled during update.**
- **Update may take some time to complete.**
- **Update failure may disable handset. Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (➔P.15-31).**
- **If updated handset fails to restart, remove and reinsert battery then power on. If this fails, call SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (➔P.15-31).**

Function List

Main Menu

To show the below items in Standby, press ▣.

Main Menu Item		Page
Messaging		
	Received msg.	P.4-21
	Create new	P.4-3
	Retrieve new	P.4-7
	Drafts	P.4-11
	Templates	P.4-11
	Sent msg.	P.4-11
	Unsent msg.	P.4-11
	Server mail	P.4-24
	Create new SMS	P.4-5
	Settings	P.14-12
	Memory status	P.4-25
Yahoo!		
	Yahoo! Keitai	P.5-3
	Menu list	P.5-3
	Bookmarks	P.5-8
	Saved pages	P.5-8
	Last page	P.5-3
	Web search	P.5-9
	Enter URL	P.5-8
	History	P.5-3
	PC site browser	P.5-4
	Browser settings	P.14-16

Main Menu Item	Page
S! Appli	
S! Appli List	P.9-3
Settings	P.14-23
Demand history	P.9-3
Entertainment	
S! Information Channel/ Weather	P.9-5
S! Quick News	P.9-3
Free Contents	P.9-5
S! Contents Store	P.9-5
S! Addressbook Back-up	P.13-9
Camera	
Camera	P.7-6
Video camera	P.7-10
Bar code reader	P.10-8
Dynamic effect	P.7-12
Photo album	P.7-12
Media	
Music	P.8-4
Movie	P.8-7
Streaming	P.5-7
Settings	P.14-22
Tools	
Life	
Alarm	P.10-3
Calendar	P.10-4
Tasks	P.10-5
UV checker	P.10-11
Photo album	P.7-12
Stopwatch	P.10-6

Main Menu Item	Page
Tools	
Life	
World clock	P.10-7
Good night timer	P.10-7
Convenient	
Calculator	P.10-8
Notepad	P.10-8
Bar code reader	P.10-8
Infrared	P.13-3
Converter	P.10-10
Dutch treat	P.10-6
Voice recorder	P.10-11
File viewer	P.10-12
Dummy call	P.10-13
Dictionary	P.10-14
Software update	P.15-7
Data Folder	
Pictures	P.15-19
Digital camera	P.15-19
My Pictograms	P.15-19
Mail Art	P.15-19
Ring songs · tones	P.15-19
S! Appli	P.15-19
Music	P.15-20
Videos	P.15-20
Books	P.15-20
Message templates	P.15-20
Flash®	P.15-20
Flash® Ringtones	P.15-20

Main Menu Item	Page
Data Folder	
Other documents	P.15-20
Memory status	P.12-3
Infrared	
Receive	P.13-4
Transfer my details	P.14-26
Transfer files	P.14-26
Transfer all	P.13-3
TV	
Watch TV	P.6-4
Program guide	P.6-5
TV links	P.6-5
TV player	P.6-8
Reservation list	P.6-8
Settings	P.14-18
Phone	
Phonebook	P.2-13
Create new entry	P.2-13
Call log	P.3-9
Play answering machine	P.3-8
Call voice mail	P.3-15
My details	P.1-10
Group settings	P.2-20
Favorites	P.3-6
Mail group	P.4-13
S! Addressbook Back-up	P.13-9
Settings	P.14-12
Memory status	P.14-25

Main Menu Item		Page
Settings		
	Sound settings	P.14-4
	Display settings	P.14-5
	Phone settings	P.14-2
	Menu switch	P.2-3
	Security	P.14-24
	Call settings	P.14-7
	Manner mode settings	P.14-7
	Connectivity	P.14-26
	Network settings	P.14-26
	Memory settings	P.14-25
	Backup & Restore	P.14-25

Simple Mode Menu

Below are menu items shown in Main Menu when setting simple mode.

Main Menu Item		Page
Messaging		
	Received msg.	P.4-21
	Create new	P.4-3
	Drafts	P.4-11
	Templates	P.4-11
	Sent msg.	P.4-11
	Unsent msg.	P.4-11
	Create new SMS	P.4-5
	Settings	P.14-12
Yahoo!		
	Yahoo! Keitai	P.5-3
	Menu list	P.5-3
	Bookmarks	P.5-8
	Saved pages	P.5-8
	Last page	P.5-3
	Web search	P.5-9
	History	P.5-3
	Browser settings	P.14-16
Calendar		P.10-4
Tools		
	Alarm	P.10-3
	Calculator	P.10-8
	Notepad	P.10-8
	Tasks	P.10-5
	Photo album	P.7-12
	Dutch treat	P.10-6

Main Menu Item		Page
Tools		
	Bar code reader	P.10-8
	Infrared	P.13-3
	Music	P.8-4
	Movie	P.8-7
	Voice recorder	P.10-11
	Stopwatch	P.10-6
Camera		
	Camera	P.7-6
	Video camera	P.7-10
	Bar code reader	P.10-8
	Photo album	P.7-12
Data Folder		
	Pictures	P.15-19
	Digital camera	P.15-19
	My Pictograms	P.15-19
	Mail Art	P.15-19
	Ring songs · tones	P.15-19
	S! Appli	P.15-19
	Music	P.15-20
	Videos	P.15-20
	Books	P.15-20
	Message templates	P.15-20
	Flash®	P.15-20
	Flash® Ringtones	P.15-20
	Other documents	P.15-20
	Memory status	P.12-3

Main Menu Item		Page
TV		
	Watch TV	P.6-4
	TV player	P.6-8
	Reservation list	P.6-8
	Settings	P.14-18
Phone		
	Phonebook	P.2-13
	Create new entry	P.2-13
	Call log	P.3-9
	Play answering machine	P.3-8
	Call voice mail	P.3-15
	My details	P.1-10
	Favorites	P.3-6
	Mail group	P.4-13
	Settings	P.14-12
Settings		
	Sound settings	P.14-4
	Display settings	P.14-5
	Phone settings	P.14-2
	Menu switch	P.2-3
	Security	P.14-24
	Call settings	P.14-7
	Manner mode settings	P.14-7
	Connectivity	P.14-26
	Memory settings	P.14-25
	Backup & Restore	P.14-25

Default Mode Settings

Default Volume and Ringtone settings vary depending on mode. Change incoming transmission response by mode. Available items vary by mode. See defaults below (➔P.14-7).

Item \ Mode	Normal	Manner	Drive	Meeting	Outdoor
Volume					
Voice call	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Off	Level 5
Video call	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Off	Level 5
Message	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Off	Level 5
Missed call notification	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Off	Level 5
S! Quick News	Off	N/A	N/A	Off	Off
Delivery report	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Off	Level 5
Phone sounds	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Off	Level 5
Ringtone (Ringtone : Duration)					
Voice call	Samsung Tune	N/A	N/A	Samsung Tune	Samsung Tune
Video call	Samsung Tune	N/A	N/A	Samsung Tune	Samsung Tune
Message	Samsung Tune : 5 seconds	N/A	N/A	Samsung Tune : 5 seconds	Samsung Tune : 5 seconds
Missed call notification	BusinessTone : 5 seconds	N/A	N/A	BusinessTone : 5 seconds	BusinessTone : 5 seconds
S! Quick News	BusinessTone : 5 seconds	N/A	N/A	BusinessTone : 5 seconds	BusinessTone : 5 seconds
Delivery report	BusinessTone : 5 seconds	N/A	N/A	BusinessTone : 5 seconds	BusinessTone : 5 seconds
Vibration					
Voice call	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
Video call	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
Message	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
Missed call notification	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
S! Quick News	Off	Off	N/A	Off	Off
Delivery report	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
Phone sounds[1]					
Keypad tones	Off	N/A	N/A	Off	Off
System sounds	Several tones on	Alerts on call	N/A	Alerts on call	Several tones on

Item \ Mode	Normal	Manner	Drive	Meeting	Outdoor
External light					
Incoming					
Voice call	Pattern 4	Pattern 4	Pattern 4	Pattern 4	Pattern 4
Video call	Pattern 4	Pattern 4	Pattern 4	Pattern 4	Pattern 4
Message	Pattern 1	Pattern 1	Pattern 1	Pattern 1	Pattern 1
Missed call notification	Pattern 4	Pattern 4	Pattern 4	Pattern 4	Pattern 4
S! Quick News	Pattern 3	Pattern 3	Pattern 3	Pattern 3	Pattern 3
Alarms	Pattern 2	Pattern 2	Pattern 2	Pattern 2	Pattern 2
Delivery report	Pattern 1	Pattern 1	Pattern 1	Pattern 1	Pattern 1
Notification					
Missed call	Pattern 4	Pattern 4	Pattern 4	Pattern 4	Pattern 4
Message	Pattern 3	Pattern 3	Pattern 3	Pattern 3	Pattern 3
Answering Machine	Pattern 3	Pattern 3	Pattern 3	Pattern 3	Pattern 3
Missed call notification	Pattern 4	Pattern 4	Pattern 4	Pattern 4	Pattern 4
Missed alarm[2]	Pattern 2	Pattern 2	Pattern 2	Pattern 2	Pattern 2
Delivery report	Pattern 1	Pattern 1	Pattern 1	Pattern 1	Pattern 1
Close folder	Pattern 2	Pattern 2	Pattern 2	Pattern 2	Pattern 2
Answering machine	Off	Off	N/A[3]	Off	Off

[1]In Manner mode, System sounds can be set; Phone sounds is not available.

[2]Setting for missed schedule (➔P.10-14) or task (➔P.10-16) notification (not for Alarm (➔P.10-3) or Alarm in Schedule or Tasks).

[3]Answering machine activates automatically in Drive mode and cannot be disabled.

Text Entry Window Key Assignments

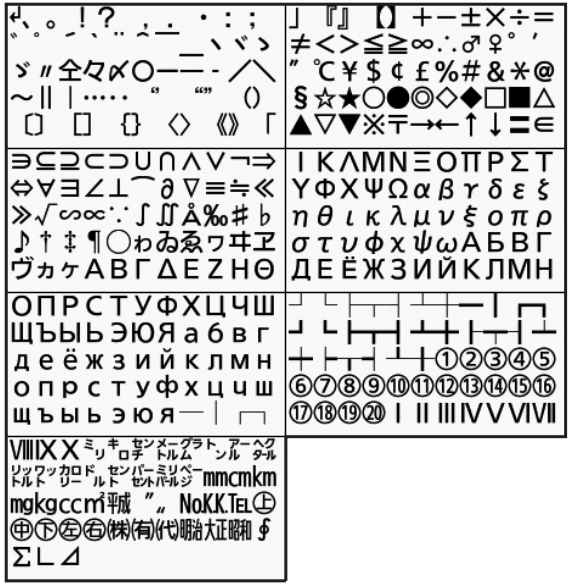
Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Press a key repeatedly until the target character appears.
Press [mode] to change text entry mode.
Press [#] to switch to Symbols, press [*] to toggle Pictograms and Emoticons.

Key	Kanji/Hiragana	Katakana	Alphanumerics	Numbers
1	あいうえおぁぃぅぇぉ1	アイウエオァィゥェォ1	.@-_/:~[1]1	1
2	かきくけこ2	カキクケコ2	ABCabc2	2
3	さしすせそ3	サシスセソ3	DEFdef3	3
4	たちつてとっ4	タチツテトッ4	GHIghi4	4
5	なにぬねの5	ナニヌネノ5	JKLjkl5	5
6	はひふへほ6	ハヒフヘホ6	MNOmno6	6
7	まみむめも7	マミムメモ7	PQRSpqrs7	7
8	やゆよゃゅょ8	ヤユヨャュョ8	TUVtuv8	8
9	らりるれろ9	ラリルレロ9	WXYZwxyz9	9
0	わをんー <Space> 0	ワヲンー <Space> 0	'<Space>0	0
*	• Add ゛ / ゜ to unfixed, convertible kana • Toggle capital letter/lower case for convertible kana.		• Toggle upper/lower-case (only before fixing and convertible character for entering alphabets)	-
#	、。 ！？ <Line break>		,.!?<Line break>	#
[call]	• Reverse toggle characters assigned to the same key before finalizing character selection			-
[mode]	• Change entry mode			
[mode]	• Change Entry mode to Pictogram/Symbol/Emotion			

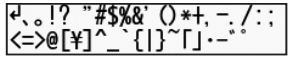
[1]When double-byte, "~" cannot be used (" 〜 " appears on Display).

Symbols

Double-byte Symbols



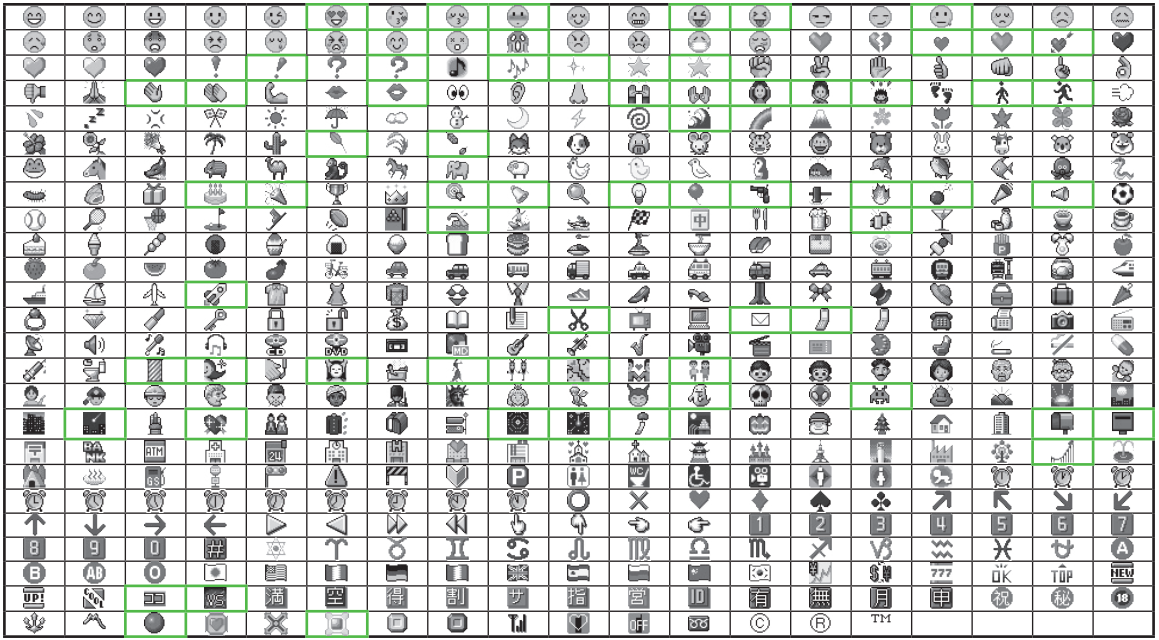
Single-byte Symbols



Symbol Conversions

Symbol Label	Symbol	Symbol Label	Symbol
あっと	@ @	こめ	※
いこーる	= =	ころん	: ;
えん	¥¥	さんかく	△ ▲ ▽ ▼
おんぷ	♪	しかく	◇ ◆ □ ■
かける	×	どう	ゝ 〃 仝々
かっこ	()「」『』【】〈〉[]' '" "（ ）〔 〕［ ］｛ ｝〈 〉《 》	ぱーせんと	% %
		ほし	☆ ★
		まる	○ ● ◎
から	～	やじるし	→ ← ↑ ↓

Pictograms



- Pictograms with ☐ are animated.
- Some pictograms and animated pictograms may not appear properly on some models of SoftBank handsets or other devices.

Memory

S! Mail/ SMS (Phone memory)	Received msg.	Up to 1000 messages or 10MB
	Drafts	Up to 20 messages or 3MB
	Sent msg.	Up to 500 messages or 5MB
	Unsent msg.	Up to 20 messages or 3MB
SMS	USIM Card	Up to ten messages
Data Folder	Pictures	Up to 999 items (files/sub-folders) per folder or 200MB
	My pictograms	
	Mail Art	
	Ring songs · tones	
	S! Appli	
	Music	
	Videos	
	Books	
	Message Templates	
	Flash®	
	Flash® Ringtones	
	Other Documents	
Calendar/ Tasks	Up to 500 schedules/tasks	
Notepad	Up to 100 memos	
Phonebook	Handset	Up to 1000 members
	USIM Card	Up to 50 members

Specifications

Handset specifications may change without prior notice.

SoftBank 840SC

Item	Specification
Weight*	120.8 g
Continuous Talk Time*	3G Voice Call: 240 minutes 3G Video Call: 130 minutes
Continuous Standby Time* (Display off)	3G Network: 400 hours
Dimensions (W x H x D)*	50.0 x 109.95 x 15.4 mm
Maximum Output	0.25 W

*Approximate value

- Handset with battery installed.
- Battery Time is calculated by SoftBank Mobile under stable signal conditions. Calling in poor signal conditions or leaving handset on out-of-range will consume more power and may reduce Battery Time by more than half.
- Frequent handset operations requiring Backlight (e.g., Yahoo! Keitai) may reduce Continuous Talk Time and Continuous Standby Time.
- Using video for Wallpaper may significantly reduce Continuous Talking and Continuous Standby Time.
- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a battery in stable signal conditions. Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery with handset closed without calls or operations, in Standby, in stable signal conditions. Alternating between usage and Standby shortens Continuous Talk Time and Continuous Standby Time. Talk Time/Standby Time may vary by environment (battery status, ambient temperature, etc.).

Materials & Finishing

Parts	Materials & Finishing
Housing (upper)	PC/SPRAY
Housing (lower)	PC+GF20% (STS INSERT)/SPRAY
Housing (front)	PC+GF20%/SPRAY
Housing (rear)	PC+GF20%/SPRAY
Upper DECO	PC/SPRAY
Keypad	PC/SPRAY
Side Key	PC+POLYURETHANE/SPRAY
Battery Cover	PC+GF20%/SPRAY

Battery

Item	Specification
Voltage	3.7 V
Type	Lithium-ion
Capacity	880 mAh
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 36.0 x 43.6 x 5.5 mm (excluding protruding parts)

Phone Book

Each entry contains these items:

Item/Description	Location
Last name	
Double/single-byte (saved to ***Name*** in USIM Card Phone Book)	Handset: Yes (up to 50 bytes)
	USIM Card: Yes[1]
First name	
Double/single-byte (saved to ***Name*** in USIM Card Phone Book)	Handset: Yes (up to 50 bytes)
	USIM Card: Yes[1]
Reading last name	
Single-byte (saved to ***Reading name*** in USIM Card Phone Book)	Handset: Yes (up to 50 bytes)
	USIM Card: Yes[1]
Reading first name	
Single-byte (saved to ***Reading name*** in USIM Card Phone Book)	Handset: Yes (up to 50 bytes)
	USIM Card: Yes[1]
Phone number	
Saved with area code	Handset: Yes (five entries/up to 32 bytes)
	USIM Card: Yes[1 2]
Phone icon	
Select one of seven icons	Handset: Yes
	USIM Card: No[3]
E-mail address	
Single-byte alphanumerics	Handset: Yes (five entries/up to 128 bytes)
	USIM Card: No

Item/Description	Location
E-mail address icon	
Select one of four icons	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No
Picture	
Still image appears for incoming calls Select a Data Folder image/Character icon or capture with Camera	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No
Group	
Select from original five groups including ***No group***, and added group Maximum 16 groups can be added.	Handset: Yes USIM Card: Yes[2]
Birthday	
Date of birth	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No
Blood type	
Select one of four types or ***None***	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No
Address	
Post code (40 bytes), Country (64 bytes), Province, City, Street and Additional information (128 bytes)	Handset: Yes (two entries) USIM Card: No
Address icon	
Select one of three icons	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No
Homepage	
Enter up to 1,024 bytes	Handset: Yes (two entries) USIM Card: No

Item/Description	Location
Homepage icon	
Select one of three icons	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No
Company	
Enter up to 64 bytes	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No
Job title	
Enter up to 64 bytes	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No
Memo	
Enter up to 512 bytes	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No
Secret mode	
On/Off	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No
Ringtone	
Voice Call/Video Call/Messages Selectable from Data Folder	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No
Vibration	
Set Vibration for Voice Call/Video Call/Messages Selectable from Data Folder	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No

[1]Number of savable characters varies depending by USIM Card.

[2]Number of savable items varies depending by USIM Card.

- If different USIM Card (with saved entries) is inserted, copy saved USIM entries to handset confirmation appears when handset is first powered on. Choose ***Yes*** to copy entries.

Image Size

Capturing options and corresponding image sizes:

Capture Mode	Image Size
Normal Scene	3.1M (1536x2048) Wide2.4M (1232x2048) 2M (1200x1600) Wide1.5M (960x1600) Wide1.0M (768x1280) 0.3M (480x640) Wallpaper (240x400) Mail (240x320)
Multi shot Photo combi	Wallpaper (240x400) Mail (240x320)
Panorama shot	Wallpaper (400x240) Mail (320x240)
Video	QVGA (320x240) QCIF (176x144) SQCIF (128x96) S! Mail (176x144) S! Mail (128x96)

Media Player

Player	File (Extension)
Music	MPEG4 Audio (mp4, m4a*, or 3gp (sound only)), SoftBank Music Contents (smc)
Movie	MPEG4 (mp4, 3gp), H.263, H.264

*****If Album art is saved in m4a, it is played in window.

• To play a music file in a format other than above, select it from ***Ring songs・tones***. Even compatible files must be saved in ***Ring songs・tones*** to play.

Note

Movie files exceeding 320 x 240 (mp4 or 3gp) in resolution cannot be played.

File Type

Folder/Description	File Type[1]
Pictures	
Image files captured with handset camera	JPEG, BMP, GIF, WBMP, PNG, Animation GIF
Digital camera	
Image files captured with the handset Camera (available only when Memory Card is inserted)	JPEG
My Pictograms	
Downloaded Pictograms	GIF, GPK
Mail Art	
Image related to message	JPEG, GIF
Ring songs・tones	
Voice Recorder files, downloaded music, and other sound files	SMAF, MIDI, SP-MIDI, SMF, Mobile XMF, MPEG4 Audio, AMR
S! Appli	
Download S! Appli	JAD, JAR

Folder/Description	File Type[1]
Music	
Downloaded Chaku-Uta®	MPEG4 Audio (mp4, m4a, 3gp), smc
Videos	
Handset video files	MPEG4 (mp4, 3gp)[2]
Books	
Download Books	CCF
Message Templates	
S! Mail Templates	HMT
Flash®	
Downloaded Flash® files	SWF
Flash® Ringtones	
Assignable downloaded Flash® files	SWF
Other documents	
Document, graphic, vcf, vcs[3], etc. files requiring File viewer for use on handset.	vcf file, vcs file, URL, EML, PDF, XLS, DOC, PPT, TXT, HTML, VNT, OPML, Unsupported file

[1]Files are saved by type. Files cannot be moved to or saved in folders that do not support them.

[2]Files exceeding 320 x 240 resolution cannot be played.

[3]Use vcf, vcs files to send or transfer handset files via S! Mail, etc. Handset supports vcf file, for Phone Book entries, and vcs file for Task/Schedule.

Warranty & Service

Headset specification may change without prior notice.

Warranty

Handset purchase includes Warranty.

- Confirm shop name and date of purchase.
- Read through the contents of the Warranty and keep it in a safe place.
- The warranty period can be found in the Warranty.

SoftBank Mobile is not liable for damage to you or a third party from missed calls, etc. due to handset failure or malfunction, etc.

Repair Requests

Before submitting handset for repair, consult "Troubleshooting" (➔P.15-2) for a solution. If a problem persists, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (➔P.15-31) or the nearest SoftBank Shop; be prepared to describe problem in detail.

- During the warranty period, repairs will be made under the terms and conditions described in the warranty.
- After the warranty period, repairs will be upon request; if said repairs can be made, you will be charged for them.

Note

- **Handset files and settings may be lost or altered due to accidents or repairs. Keep a copy of important files, etc. like Phone Book entries. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for damage resulting from accidental loss or alteration of handset files (Phone Book, Data Folder, etc.) or settings.**
- **Disassembling or modifying this product may be a violation of the Radio Law. Note that SoftBank Mobile will not accept repair requests for disassembled or modified products.**

Index

A

AC Charger **1-8**

Account Details **1-10**
- Reset 1-13

Adjust Volume **3-3**

Alarms **10-3**

All Reset **11-7**

Answering Machine **3-7**
- Cancel 3-7
- Delete records 3-8
- Play records 3-8
- Set 3-7

Any key answer **14-3**

Auto answer **3-21, 14-9**

Auto answer list
- Add 3-21
- Delete 3-21

Auto redial **14-11**

B

Barcode Reader **10-8**
- Create QR Code 10-9
- Scanning 10-8, 10-9, 10-18

Battery **1-6, 1-7**
- Inserting & Removing 1-7

Black List **3-8**

Bookmark **5-8**
- Delete 5-13
- Internet connection 5-8
- Save 5-8
- Send URL 5-12

BookSurfing® **9-6**

C

Cache **5-3**

Calculator **10-8**

Calendar **10-4**
- Delete schedule 10-15
- Save schedule 10-5, 10-14
- Schedule 10-4
- View schedule 10-5, 10-15

Call Barring service **3-14, 3-18**

Caller ID service **3-14, 3-19**

Call Forwarding service **3-14, 3-16**

Call Log **3-9**
- Delete 3-11
- View 3-9

Call time & cost
- Check 3-11
- Reset 3-11
- Set max cost limit 14-8
- Show charge after call 14-8

Call Waiting service **3-14, 3-16**

Camera **7-3**
- Attach to message for sending still image 7-13
- Capture video 7-11
- Editing Still Images 7-11
- Effects 7-13
- Macro 7-13
- Multi shot 7-6
- Panorama shot 7-7
- Photo combination 7-7
- Quick Play 7-8, 7-11
- Scene 7-6
- Send a still image via infrared 7-13
- Settings 14-20, 14-21
- Timer 7-13
- Viewfinder 7-3, 7-9

Cancel PIN lock **11-4**

Center Access Code (Network Password) . . . **1-13**

Change mode settings **1-11**

Changing PIN/PIN2 . . . . . **11-3**

Charge Battery **1-8**

Charger/External Device Port **1-3**

Clear memory **11-6**

Color Theme **2-6**

Conference Call service **3-14, 3-17**

Content Key info **12-11**

Convenient tools **10-2**

Converter **10-10**

Country number **14-10**

D

Data Folder **12-2**
Date & Time **14-2**
Default mode settings **1-12, 15-11**
Dictionary **10-14**
Digital TV **6-2**
Alarm 14-18
Area Setup 6-3
Auto power off 14-20
Calls & Alarms 14-20
Data Broadcast 6-5
Delete station data 14-19
Display brightness 14-19
Duration 14-19
Image location 14-19
Light 14-18
Manufacture Number 14-19
Notify connection 14-19
One Seg 6-2
Record programs 6-6
Reminder time 14-19
Save Location 14-20
Set alert tone 14-18
Set recording 14-19
Settings 6-10, 14-18
Sound language 14-19
Sound mode 14-19
Subtitle Display 6-10
Timer recording 6-8
TV Links 6-5
TV player 6-8
TV Window 6-4
Vibration 14-18
Volume 14-18
Watch TV 6-4
Display **1-3**
Backlight 14-6
Brightness 14-6
Clock/Calendar 14-6
Color theme 14-5
Dialling display 14-6
Font 14-6
Mini clock 14-6
Operator name 14-7
Saving mode 14-6
Smart wallpaper 14-5
Text scroll speed 14-6
Wallpaper 2-5
Display language **14-2**
Download Content Key **8-10, 12-10**
Dummy Call **10-13**
Dutch Treat **10-11**

E

Earphone call **14-11**
Emergency call **3-7**
Emergency Location Report **3-7**

F

Face Link
Save 12-4
Use 12-5
Favorites **3-6**
File **12-3, 12-6**
Copy 12-6
Delete 12-7
Icon 12-3
Lock/Unlock 12-12
Rename 12-6
Set images as Wallpaper etc. 12-12
Set Ringtone 12-12
Sort 12-11
File Viewer **10-12**
Folder **12-6**
Copy 12-6
Create 12-6
Delete 12-7
Rename 12-6
Free Contents **9-5**
Function Lock **11-5**

G

Global Roaming **3-12**
Good Night Timer **10-7, 10-17**

H

History 8-9
- Delete 5-9, 8-12
- Delete (S! Mail) 4-16
- Delete (SMS) 4-19
- Internet connection 5-3, 5-4
- S! Addressbook Back-up. 13-9
- S! Mail. 4-16
- SMS. 4-19
- Streaming 8-9

I

Icon
- Attached file 4-5
- Call Log Record 3-10
- Data Folder 15-19
- Display. 1-3
- File list. 12-3
- Message 4-9
- Message list. 4-9
- Mode. 1-12
- Movie window. 8-6
- Music window 8-4
- Schedule 10-4
- Shooting mode (still image) 7-3
- Shooting mode (video) 7-9
- Video Call 3-5
- Weather. 9-6

Image Viewer. 12-3

Incoming light 15-12

Infrared 13-3
- Authorization Code 13-3
- Receive files. 13-4
- Send files. 13-3

International Code 14-10

Internet 5-2

Internet page. 5-3, 5-5
- Font size 5-10

K

Key Lock 1-11

L

Language. 14-2

lifestyle tools. 10-2

Lock 11-3
- Function lock 11-5
- Password Lock 11-4
- Phone Lock 11-3
- PIN 11-4
- USIM Lock 11-4

Log
- Call Log 3-9

M

Machi-Uta™ 14-4

Mailbox 4-11
- Drafts. 4-11
- Received message 4-11
- Sent message. 4-11
- Templates 4-11
- Unsent. 4-11

Mail Group. 4-13

Main menu style 14-5

Manner mode 1-11

Mass Storage. 13-5, 14-26

Media Player 8-2
- Add to playlist 8-11
- Create Playlist 8-8
- Download 8-3
- Play movie 8-7
- Play music 8-4
- Play playlist 8-8
- Repeat mode 14-22
- Settings 14-22

Memory Card. 12-8
- Insert/Remove 12-8

Memory Card backup 13-5

Memory Status 12-3, 12-9

Menu Operations. iii

Message **4-2**
Action settings 4-17
Attach file 4-4
Change folder name 4-25
Create folder 4-14
Create (S! Mail) 4-3
Create (SMS) 4-5
Delete 4-12
Delete folder 4-25
Delete messages on Server 4-25
Delete templates 4-12
Details 4-22
Draft message icon 4-9
Feeling settings 4-17
Font size 4-22
Forward 4-10
Forward messages on Server 4-25
Graphic Mail 4-6, 4-18
Icon (attached file) 4-5
Lock/Unlock 4-12
Mail Server 4-8
Maximum Size 4-18
Memory Status 4-25
Message notice 14-13
Move 4-14
Move SMS 4-23
Received message icon 4-9
Receive Server Mail 4-24
Receiving mail list message 4-24
Reply 4-10
Retrieve all mail 4-24
Save attachment 4-13
Save templates 4-19
Save to drafts 4-17, 4-20
Send draft message 4-23
Sending options 4-18, 4-20
Send unsent message 4-23
Sent message icon 4-10
Server Mail 4-24
Server Mail memory 4-25
Set Secret 4-25
Setting address 4-3
S! Mail 4-2
S! Mail Send Reservation 4-18
SMS 4-2, 4-19
SMS Send Reservation 4-20
Sort 4-14, 4-23
Spam 4-15
Unsent message icon 4-10
View 4-7, 4-9
View Attachment 4-22
Mobile Tracker **11-5**
Multi Selector Operations . . . . . **iii**
Mute **3-19, 3-21**

N

Notepad **10-8**
Notification light **15-12**

O

Offline Mode **1-11**

P

Password Lock **11-4**
PC Site Browser **5-4**
Copy text 5-9
Delete certificates 14-17
Details 5-10
Enter URL 5-4
Font size 14-6
Manufacture Number 14-17
PC screen 5-11
Root certificates 14-18
Script 14-18
Search 5-9
Send URL 5-9
Phone Book **2-13**
Copy 2-18
Create Message 2-18
Delete 2-15
Edit 2-19
Entry 2-13
Search 2-14
Set Secret mode 2-18
Phone Lock **11-3**
Phone Number (Account Details) **1-10**
Phone Password **1-12, 11-3**

Photo Album 7-12
Photo Library 7-12
Dynamic effect 7-12
Photo Album 7-12
PIN2 Code 1-13
PIN Certification 11-4
PIN Code 1-13, 11-3, 11-4
PIN lock 11-4
Place a call 3-2
Phone Book 2-15
Place a Video Call 3-5
Place International calls 3-12
Power On/Off 1-9
Preferred Network 3-13
PUK Code 11-4

R

Receive a call 3-2
Receive a Video Call 3-5
Record 3-3
Reject incoming calls
Black List 3-22
Edit black list 14-10
Payphone 3-9
Set reject number 3-9
Unavailable 3-9
Unknown 3-9
Withheld 3-9
Reset settings 11-6
Ringtone 15-11
Ringtone reducer 14-11
Ringtone/Vibration 2-4

S

S! Addressbook Back-up 13-7
Sync log 13-9
Sync mode 13-7
S! Applications 9-3
Saved Pages 5-8
Delete 5-13
Rename 5-13
Save 5-8
View 5-8
S! Contents Store 9-5
Secret mode 11-5
Secure Remote Lock 11-5
Security Code 1-12
Sending DTMF 3-20
Sending Template 4-24
Set default memory 14-26
Shortcuts Key 2-3
S! Information Channel 9-5
Register 9-5
View update information 9-5
Weather Indicator 9-6
S! Information Channel/Weather
Settings 14-23
Slide show 2-5
Softkeys ii
Software update 15-7
Sounds & Vibration 14-4
Speakerphone call 3-20, 3-21
S! Quick News 9-3
Delete 9-4
Refresh 9-4
Register 9-4
SSL/TLS 5-2
Standby Display 2-5
Stopwatch 10-6
Streaming 5-7
Symbols 15-14

T

Tasks 10-5
Delete 10-17
Templates 4-11
Text Entry 2-7
Copy 2-16
Cut 2-16
Delete 2-11
Edit 2-11
Emoticons 2-9

Entry mode 2-8
Line Break 2-10
Paste 2-16
Pictograms 2-9
Space 2-10
Symbol 2-9
Undo 2-16, 2-17
Time zone 14-2

U

Unanswered Call 3-2
USB connection 13-4
User's Dictionary 2-12
Delete 2-17
Save 2-12
USIM Card 1-4
Inserting & Removing 1-5
USIM Lock 11-4
USIM Password 11-4
Using Main Menu 2-2
Using Shortcuts 2-2
UV Checker 10-6

V

vcf, vcs file 12-12, 15-20
Vibration 2-4, 15-11
Video
Attach to message for sending video 7-13
Send video via Infrared 7-13
Video Call 3-4
Adjust volume 3-5
Alternative picture 14-9
Auto answer 14-9
Mute 3-21
Putting a Video Call on Hold 3-21
Retry with 14-9
Show My Image 14-10
Speakerphone call 3-21
View Graphics/Animation 12-4
Voice Call 3-2
Adjust ringer volume 3-2
Adjust volume 3-3
Hold incoming call 3-3
Mute 3-19
Speakerphone 3-20
Whisper 3-20
Voicemail service 3-14
Voice Recorder 10-11
Play sound files 10-11
Record sound 10-11
Send sound files 10-20
Volume 15-11

W

Window
Calendar 10-4
Movie window 8-6
Music window 8-4
Still Image Viewer 7-3
TV window 6-4
Video Viewfinder 7-9
Voice Recorder 10-11
Window Operations
Phone Book window 2-13
Text Entry Window 2-7
World Clock 10-7

Y

Yahoo! Keitai 5-3
Copy text 5-9
Delete Certificate 14-16
Details 5-10
Enter URL 5-3
Font size 14-6
Manufacture Number 14-16
Root Certificates 14-17
Search 5-9
Sending URL 5-9

Objective Index

Add
Favorites 3-6

Adjust volume
Hearing volume 14-11
Ringtone volume 3-2

Backup
Memory Card 13-6
Phone Book 13-7

Cancel/Unlock
Answering Machine 3-7
Call Barring 3-18
Caller ID 3-19
Call Forwarding 3-16
Call Waiting 3-16
File Lock 12-12
Infrared 14-26
Key Lock 1-11
Manner mode 1-11
Message Lock 4-23
Messages 4-12
Offline Mode 1-11
Password Lock 11-4
Phone Lock 11-3
PIN Lock 11-4
Secret mode 11-5
Vibration 2-4
Voicemail 3-15
Whisper 3-20

Change
Font size in page 5-10
Mail address 4-3
Mode 1-12
Phone Password 11-3
PIN 11-3
PIN2 11-3

Copy
File/Folder 12-6
Message content 4-22
Scanned characters 10-19
Text 2-16
Text in page 5-9

Create
Dynamic effect 7-12

Delete/Clear
Call Log 3-11
Favorites 3-6
File/Folder 12-7
History 4-16, 4-19
Memory 11-6
Messages 4-12, 4-22, 4-25
Notepad 10-18
Phone Book 2-15
Recorded programs 6-8
Records (Answering Machine) 3-8
Reject Number 14-10
Schedule 10-15
Tasks 10-17
Text 2-11
User's Dictionary 14-3

Edit
Account Details 1-10
Phone Book entry 2-19
Schedule 10-15
Still images 7-11
Tasks 10-17
Text 2-11

Initialize
Browser 5-10

Initiate
Memory Card 12-8

Insert/Remove
Battery 1-7
Memory Card 12-8
USIM Card 1-5

Place a call
Emergency call 3-7
International call 3-12
Video Call 3-5
Voice Call 3-2

Play
Flash® 5-10
Movie 8-7
Music 8-4
Playlist 8-8
Recorded programs 6-8
Records (Answering Machine) 3-8
Sound 5-10
Voice Recorder 10-11

Protect/Lock
File 12-12
Files 10-21
Function Lock 11-5
Message 4-23
Messages 4-12

Receive
Infrared 13-4
Message 4-9
Messages 4-8, 4-24
USB connection 13-5

Reset
Account Details 1-13
Alarm 10-3
All Reset 11-7
Call Time & Cost 3-11
Ranking 3-11
Reset settings 11-6

Save
Face Link 12-4
Mail address 4-3
Message 4-19
Phone Book entry 2-13
Tasks 10-5
User's Dictionary 2-12

Search
Characters in page 10-21
Notepad 10-18
Phone Book entry 2-14
Tasks 10-17

Send
Favorites 3-6
Files 12-11
Infrared 13-3
Manufacture Number 14-19
Massage (SMS) 4-5
Message (S! Mail) 4-3
Notepad 10-18
Tasks 10-17
URL 5-9
USB connection 13-5

Set/Activate
Alarm 10-3
Answering Machine 3-7
Any key answer 14-3
Black List 3-8
Call Barring 3-18
Caller ID 3-19
Call Forwarding 3-16
Call Waiting 3-16
Camera 14-20
Channel 6-3
Date & Time 14-2
Digital TV 6-10, 14-18
Display 14-5
Dummy Call 10-13
File Lock 12-12
Font 14-5
Font size 4-22
Font size in Message 14-13
Infrared 14-26
International Code 14-10
Key Lock 1-11
Manner mode 1-11
Media Player 14-22
Message Lock 4-23
Missed Call Notification 3-15
Mobile Tracker 11-5
Offline Mode 1-11
Operator 3-12
Password Lock 11-4
Phone Book 2-15
Phone Lock 11-3
PIN Lock 11-4
Reject incoming calls 14-10
Ringtone 2-4
Secret Data Folder 11-5, 14-24
Secret mode 2-18, 11-5
Side key 14-3
Sounds & Vibration 14-4
Still images 7-13, 12-12
Vibration 2-4
Video 7-14, 12-12, 14-21, 14-22
Voicemail 3-15
Wallpaper 2-5
Whisper 3-20

Show
Calendar 10-5
Call Log 3-9
Cost after call 14-8
Records (Answering Machine) 3-8

View

Account Details 1-10
Call Log 3-9
Call time & cost 3-11
Captured Pictures 7-8
Data Folder 12-3
Data on Memory Card 12-9
Memory status 4-25, 12-9
Message 4-7, 4-9, 4-21, 4-24
Photo Album 7-12
Ranking 3-10
Recorded Video 7-11
Reservation 6-9
Scanned Barcode 10-10
Schedule 10-5
Tasks 10-5

Advanced Settings Index

Account Details 1-13
Alarm 10-14
Barcode Reader 10-18
Bookmarks 5-12
Calendar 10-14
Call Log Records/Ranking 3-21
Capturing Still Images 7-13
Capturing Still Images/Recording Video . . .7-13
Conference Call 3-22
Currency/Unit Conversion 10-19
Dutch Treat 10-20
File Viewer 10-21
Good Night Timer 10-17
Managing Files/Folders 12-11
Managing Folders 4-25
Memory Status 12-12
Movie Playback 8-10
Music Playback 8-9
Notepad 10-18
Page Operations 5-11
PC Site Browser 5-11
Phone Book 2-17
Photo Library 7-15
Playlist 8-11
Quick Play 7-14
Received Messages 4-21
Recording Videos 7-14
S! Addressbook Back-up 13-9
Saved Pages 5-13
Sending Graphic Mail 4-21
Sending S! Mail 4-16
Sending SMS 4-19
S! Information Channel 9-7
S! Quick News 9-6
Standby 2-16
Streaming 8-11
Tasks 10-16
Text Entry 2-16
TV Timer/TV Timer Recording 6-11
User's Dictionary 2-17
Using/Managing Messages 4-22
Video Call 3-20
Viewing Files 12-10
Voice Call 3-19
Voice Recorder 10-20
While Watching TV 6-9
Yahoo! Keitai 5-11
Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser 5-9

Customer Service

For SoftBank Mobile handset or service information, call General Information. For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Mobile Customer Center
From a SoftBank handset, dial 157 for General Information, or 113 for Customer Assistance, toll free.

SoftBank Mobile Global Call Center
From outside Japan, dial +81-3-5351-3491. (please take care to dial correctly. International charges will apply.)

Call these numbers toll free from landlines.

Subscription Areas	Contact	
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-250-113

Memo

SoftBank 840SC User Guide

July 2010, First Edition

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

To help protect the environment and recycle valuable resources, mobile phone, and PHS shops displaying the above mark accept mobile phones, batteries, and chargers of all manufacturers.

- Mobile phones, batteries, and chargers collected for recycling cannot be returned.
- To protect your privacy, delete any personal information (telephone numbers, call log records, messages, etc.) beforehand.
- For more information, please visit your nearest SoftBank Shop.

Model Name: SoftBank 840SC

Manufacturer: Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd.